

# GRAMMAR

BY

NEVILL FORBES, M.A., PH.D.

READER IN RUSSIAN  
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

NUCLEAR PHYSICS DIVISION,  
SAHA INSTITUTE OF NUCLEAR PHYSICS,  
92, Acharya Prafulla Chandra Road,  
CALCUTTA-9.

~~SECRET~~

CONFIDENTIAL ACT  
CONFIDENTIAL

BANIA INSTITUTE OF POST GRADUATE PHYSICS  
 82, A. Lane, P.O. Chandra Road,  
 CALCUTTA-9.  
 (Cable Address: BANIA INSTITUTE OF POST GRADUATE PHYSICS, CALCUTTA-9.)

OXFORD: AT THE CLARENDON PRESS  
LONDON: AMEN CORNER, E.C.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS: HUMPHREY MILFORD

EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK TORONTO

**MELBOURNE BOMBAY**



Ajit Saha  
Edinburgh  
31<sup>st</sup> Aug. 1949.



Pick:- A. K. SAHA.  
NUCLEAR PHYSICS DIVISION.  
SAHA INSTITUTE OF NUCLEAR PHYSICS,  
92, Acharya Pratulla Chandra Road,  
CALCUTTA-9.

DR. AJIT KUMAR SAHA  
125, SOUTHERN AVENUE,  
CALCUTTA-29





# R U S S I A N G R A M M A R

BY

NEVILL FORBES, M.A., PH.D.

READER IN RUSSIAN

IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD



Prof:- A K. SAHA

NUCLEAR PHYSICS DIVISION.

SAHA INSTITUTE OF NUCLEAR PHYSICS.

*92, Acharya Pratfulla Chandra Road,*

CALCUTTA-9.

OXFORD

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1914

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS  
LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK  
TORONTO MELBOURNE BOMBAY  
HUMPHREY MILFORD M.A.  
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

Prof.- A. K. SAHA.  
NUCLEAR PHYSICS DIVISION  
SAHA INSTITUTE OF NUCLEAR PHYSICS  
92, Acharya Pratulla Chandra Road,  
CALCUTTA-9.

## PREFACE

THE accompanying volume is a practical rather than a scientific grammar. It is intended for the use of those students who are working under a teacher able to explain the difficulties of the language to them, and also for the use of those who are working at the language by themselves with the object of being able to read it; but it does not profess to be an adequate means of teaching any one working alone how to speak Russian.

As it is an elementary book, philological references and comparisons and etymological explanations have been avoided, in order not to discourage the beginner.

The most important points of the syntax that could be included in a book of this size have been mentioned, not in a part by themselves, but incorporated in the morphology.

I wish to thank Dr. Henry Bradley and Mr. Daniel Jones for the help which they have kindly given me with regard to one or two points of detail, particularly in those parts dealing with pronunciation. Syntactical examples have been gathered from the works of Pushkin, Gogol, Goncharov, and Garshin.

NEVILL FORBES.

OXFORD, June, 1914.



Prof. A. K. SAHA  
NUCLEAR PHYSICS DIVISION  
SAHA INSTITUTE OF NUCLEAR PHYSICS  
22, Acharya P. Pathi Road, Calcutta 4

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### A. ACCENTED TEXTS.

*Russian Reader.* By Boyer and Speranski; adapted by S. N. Harper. Published by the University of Chicago Press, 1906. Agents: Cambridge University Press.

*Russische Literatur.* Vols. I and II, selections from Russian authors; edited, with notes in German, and accented, by Dr. Erich Boehme. Published in the Sammlung Götschen (vols. 403-4), Götschen'sche Verlagshandlung. Leipzig, 1908-9.

*Russische Chrestomathie für Anfänger.* By Dr. Oskar Ásbóth. Leipzig, F. A. Brockhaus, 1903.

*Russische Meisterwerke mit Akzenten* (accented texts of Russian masterpieces). By L. v. Marnitz. Published by Raimund Gerhard, 12 Lessingstrasse, Leipzig. (N.B. These are published in two editions, one containing the texts alone, the other containing texts and commentary; the texts of Turgenev in this edition must be used with care as they are not always correctly accented.)

*Рѣчкіе Источники (Russian Authors).* An accented chrestomathy of Russian literature with explanatory notes in Russian. Two vols. By V. Martýnovski. Published by Y. Bashmakóv, St. Petersburg, 1908-10.

The following books are also accented:

*Рѣчкое Эхо (Russian Echo).* By Kavraiski. Published by Wilhelm Violet, Stuttgart.

*Маленькіі Рѣчкіі (The Little Russian).* By O. Pirss. Published by J. Bielefeld, Karlsruhe, Baden, 1905.

*Подноі Мір (Our Own World).* A book for the use of non-Russian children in Russian elementary schools. In three

parts. By И. Дависъ (Davis). Published by Зихманъ (Zikhman), Riga, 1908.

### B. DICTIONARIES, ETC.

*Pocket Dictionary of the English and Russian Languages.* By S. W. Linden and Dr. Th. Kawraisky. Published by Otto Holtze's Nachfolger, Leipzig, 1909.

*Complete English-Russian and Complete Russian-English Dictionary.* Two vols. By A. Alexandrow. Published by the General Staff Office, St. Petersburg, 1899-1904.

*Толковый словарь живого великорусскаго языка (Explanatory Dictionary of the living Great Russian Language).* By Dal. In four vols., 3rd edition, edited by Professor Baudouin de Courtenay. Published by Wolff, St. Petersburg, 1903-9.

*Les racines de la langue russe.* By Leger and Bardonnaut. Published by J. Maisonneuve, Paris, 1894.

*Das russische Zeitwort (The Russian Verb).* An alphabetical list of Russian verbs, giving their imperfective and perfective aspects, accented. By A. Garbell. Published separately as part of the Methode Toussaint-Langenscheidt. Langenscheidtsche Verlagsbuchhandlung, Berlin.

### C. GRAMMARS, ETC.

*Grammaire raisonnée de la langue russe.* By Gretsche-Reiff-Leger. 4th edition. Published by Maisonneuve, Paris, 1878.

*Morphologie des aspects du verbe russe.* By A. Mazon. Published by Librairie Honoré Champion, Paris, 1908.


*Emplois des aspects du verbe russe.* By A. Mazon. Published by Librairie Honoré Champion, Paris, 1914.

*L'accent tonique dans la langue russe.* By Gaston Pérot. Published in Travaux et Mémoires de l'Université de Lille. Tome IX. Mémoire No. 26. Lille, 1900.

*Continuation du verbe russe.* By Paul Boyer. (Centenaire de l'école des langues orientales vivantes. — Recueil de mémoires publié par les professeurs de l'école.) Imprimerie Nationale, Paris, 1895.

*Russische Grammatik, Russisches Lesebuch mit Glossar, Russisch-Deutsches Gesprächsbuch.* All three by Professor Dr. Erich

- Berneker, and published as vols. 66-8 in the Sammlung Göschen. Göschen'sche Verlagshandlung, Leipzig.
- Die Lehre vom russischen Accent.* By Dr. L. Kayssler. Berlin, 1866.
- Русская грамматика (Russian Grammar).* By Vostókov. 12th edition. St. Petersburg, 1874.
- Историческая русская грамматика (Historical Russian Grammar).* By Buslájev. Two vols., 4th edition. Moscow, 1875.
- Филологическія разысканія (Philological Researches).* By Grot. 4th edition. St. Petersburg, 1899.
- Общій курсъ русской грамматики.* By V. A. Bogoróditsky. Published by the University Press, Kazan, 1904.
- Курсъ грамматики русскаго языка. I: Фонетика.* By V. A. Bogoróditsky. Warsaw, 1887.

  
Prof. A. K. SAHA  
NUCLEAR PHYSICS DIVISION  
SAHA INSTITUTE OF NUCLEAR PHYSICS  
82, Acharya Prafulla Chandra Road,  
CALCUTTA-9.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Bibliography . . . . .	5
Russian Characters and Writing . . . . .	12, 13
§ 1. Orthography . . . . .	15
History of the Alphabet . . . . .	15
§ 2. The Alphabet . . . . .	17
§ 3. Pronunciation . . . . .	19
§ 4. Hard Vowels . . . . .	19
а . . . . .	20
§ 5.     я . . . . .	20
§ 6.     ы . . . . .	21
§ 7.     о . . . . .	21
§ 8.     у . . . . .	21
§ 9.     ь . . . . .	22
§ 10. Soft Vowels . . . . .	
и . . . . .	23
§ 11.   е ѣ (ě) . . . . .	23
§ 12.   и (i i v) . . . . .	26
§ 13.   ю . . . . .	28
§ 14.   ь . . . . .	28
The Consonants . . . . .	
§ 15.   г . . . . .	31
§ 16.   в . . . . .	31
§ 17.   р . . . . .	32
§ 18.   д . . . . .	33
§ 19.   ж . . . . .	34
§ 20.   з . . . . .	34
к . . . . .	35
л . . . . .	35
§ 23.   м . . . . .	36
§ 24.   н . . . . .	36
§ 25.   п . . . . .	37
§ 26.   р . . . . .	37
§ 27.   с . . . . .	38



# CONTENTS

9

	PAGE
§ 28.       т       . . . . .	38
§ 29.       ф       . . . . .	39
§ 30.       х       . . . . .	39
§ 31.       ц       . . . . .	39
§ 32.       ч       . . . . .	40
§ 33.       ш       . . . . .	40
§ 34.       щ       . . . . .	40
§ 35.       о       . . . . .	41
§ 36. Phonetic transcription of sounds . . . . .	41
§ 37. The Accent . . . . .	43
§ 38. Declension of Substantives . . . . .	44
§ 39. Masculine Nouns in -ъ, -ь, -ѣ . . . . .	45
§ 40. Feminine       ,,   in -а, -я . . . . .	49
§ 41. Neuter       ,,   in -о, -е . . . . .	51
§ 42. Feminine       ,,   in -ь . . . . .	53
§ 43. Neuter       ,,   in -и . . . . .	54
§ 44. Note on terminations of Substantives . . . . .	55
§ 45. Diminutives . . . . .	56
§ 46. Declension of Pronouns . . . . .	58
Personal       ,,   . . . . .	58
§ 47. Possessive       ,,   . . . . .	60
§ 48. Demonstrative       ,,   . . . . .	62
§ 49. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	64
§ 50. Definitive Pronouns . . . . .	67
§ 51. Indefinite       ,,   . . . . .	68
§ 52. Declension of Adjectives . . . . .	71
§ 53.       Hard       ,,   . . . . .	72
§ 54.       Soft       ,,   . . . . .	77
§ 55. Possessive       ,,   . . . . .	80
§ 56. Note on terminations of Adjectives . . . . .	82
§ 57. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	83
The Predicative Comparative . . . . .	83
§ 58. The Attributive       ,,   . . . . .	86
§ 59. The Superlative . . . . .	87
§ 60. The Numerals . . . . .	88
Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals . . . . .	88
§ 61. Declension and use of the Numerals . . . . .	89
§ 62. Cardinal Numbers in Composition . . . . .	94
§ 63. Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	94

	PAGE
§ 64. Distributive Numerals . . . . .	95
§ 65. Multiplicative Numerals . . . . .	95
§ 66. Collective Numerals . . . . .	96
§ 67. Fractions . . . . .	97
§ 68. Expression of Time . . . . .	98
§ 69. Expression of Money-Values . . . . .	103
§ 70. The Adverb . . . . .	104
§ 71. Adverbs of Place . . . . .	106
§ 72. „ Time . . . . .	108
§ 73. „ Manner . . . . .	109
§ 74. „ Degree and Quantity . . . . .	111
Note on the comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	114
§ 75. Particles and Conjunctions . . . . .	115
§ 76. Questions and Answers . . . . .	116
§ 77. Negations . . . . .	117
§ 78. Subordinative Conjunctions . . . . .	118
The Prepositions and the Use of the Cases with and without Prepositions . . . . .	118
§ 79. Alphabetical list of Prepositions . . . . .	118
§ 80. The Nominative . . . . .	120
§ 81. The Genitive . . . . .	120
§ 82. The Dative . . . . .	128
§ 83. The Accusative . . . . .	132
§ 84. The Instrumental . . . . .	138
§ 85. The Locative . . . . .	143
§ 86. The Verb . . . . .	146
§ 87. The Present . . . . .	147
§ 88. Present Regular Verbs, Classes I and II . . . . .	150
§ 89. Present Irregular Verbs . . . . .	161
§ 90. The Past . . . . .	162
§ 91. The Future . . . . .	167
§ 92. The Conditional . . . . .	167
§ 93. The Imperative . . . . .	168
The Infinitive . . . . .	170
The Gerund . . . . .	170
§ 96. The Participles: Present Participle Active . . . . .	172
§ 97. „ Past „ „ . . . . .	172
§ 98. „ Present „ Passive . . . . .	172
§ 99. „ Past „ „ . . . . .	173

# CONTENTS

11

	PAGE
§ 100. The Reflexive Verb . . . . .	175
§ 101. The uses of the Verb . . . . .	176
The Aspects	
§ 102. Use of the Present . . . . .	179
§ 103. „ Past . . . . .	182
§ 104. „ Future . . . . .	186
§ 105. „ Conditional . . . . .	189
§ 106. „ Imperative . . . . .	192
§ 107. „ Infinitive . . . . .	195
§ 108. „ Gerund . . . . .	199
§ 109. „ Participles . . . . .	200
§ 110. „ Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive . . . . .	202
§ 111. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	204
§ 112. How to express the verb <i>to be</i> . . . . .	206
§ 113. Various forms of Imperfective and Perfective Verbs . . . . .	209
§ 114. Perfective Simple Verbs . . . . .	217
§ 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs . . . . .	219
§ 116. Simple Imperfective Verbs with two forms . . . . .	221
§ 117. Anomalous Verbs . . . . .	228
§ 118. Prepositions in composition with verbs, nouns, &c. . . . .	231

# The Written Alphabet

A a

B b

B b b

T z

D d g

E e

Ж ж ж

З з з

U u ü

I i

K k

L l

M m

H h h h

O o

П п

P p p

C c

П п п п

У у у у

Ф ф

Х х

Ц ц

Ч ч

Ш ш

Щ щ

— ь ь

— ы

— 6

В в в в

Э э

Ю ю

Я я

О о

У у

Russian as Written

Только вымолвить успела,  
Дверь тихонько закрылась,  
И во святилище входит царь,  
Сторожки твой государь.  
Во все время разговора  
Он стоял позади забора,  
Речь поспешней по всему  
Потомилася ему.

„Здравствуй, краевая девица,  
Говорить он, будь царица,  
И роди богатыря  
Мне к исходу сентября.“

(Путкин)



### CORRIGENDA

- p. 21, line 19 (last line but two of § 6), *omit* 'and и'
- p. 64, line 25, *read* то же время
- p. 107, line 32, *read* нѣ было
- p. 108, line 6, *read* нѣ было
- p. 175, line 13, *read* терѣть
- p. 199, line 14, *read* вамъ
- p. 201, line 8, *read* -щій
- p. 212, line 1, *read* class II





## ORTHOGRAPHY

### § 1.

#### History of the Alphabet.

THE alphabet used by the Russians and by the other Slavs of the orthodox confession, Servians and Bulgarians, for the rendering of the sounds of their language is that known as the Cyrillic (кириллица). It is so called because its composition is attributed to St. Cyril (826-869), a Greek of Salonika, whose secular name was Constantine, who with his brother Methodius was commissioned by the Emperor Michael II to effect the conversion of Moravia, the Prince of Moravia having expressed a wish to see Christianity introduced into his country. Confronted with the problem how to communicate the Truth to the savages of Pannonia, he with great ingenuity elaborated an alphabet which with scientific accuracy represented the sounds of the Slavonic vernacular, so different from those of Greek. His work was facilitated by his knowledge of the Slavonic dialects current at that time in Macedonia, indeed it was on this account that he had been chosen to accomplish the task. The Slavonic language, for the transcription of whose sounds he composed his alphabet, is now generally considered to have been Old Bulgarian, which was, however, quite possibly intelligible to the inhabitants of Moravia at a time when the several Slavonic languages were without doubt very far from being so divergent from one another as they are to-day. Whether it was of the alphabet now called Cyrillic that St. Cyril was the author, or of the cognate alphabet called Glagolitic, still used in remote parts of Dalmatia, is uncertain, but it is probable that of the two, the latter, the Glagolitic, which has been proved to be older than the Cyrillic and was founded on the Greek minuscule script of the ninth century, was that actually compiled by him, and was later owing to the complexity of its character almost everywhere supplanted by the alphabet now known as the Cyrillic, which, founded on the Greek majuscule

script, was much clearer than the Glagolitic. The Cyrillic is the only alphabet the use of which the Russians have ever known, and it is not unnatural that its origin should have been attributed to the man who was the first to put down any Slavonic dialect in black on white, and has ever since been regarded as the fountain of their enlightenment by all Slavs of the Eastern faith. The art of writing was introduced into Russia simultaneously with Christianity in the tenth century, and the Cyrillic alphabet was imposed upon the country with as much vigour as the new religion, but with far less regard for local conditions. The alphabet had been an admirable instrument for rendering Old Bulgarian, but the phonology of that language was then already very different from that of Russian. Old Bulgarian (called in Russian 'Church-Slavonic'), however, immediately established itself as the language of the church, a position it still holds with quite inconsiderable modifications to-day; it became the only approved medium of expression for all literary work, and, though it could not remain altogether free from the influences of the vernacular Russian, especially in works of a secular character, yet the alphabet itself took such firm root, that no attempts to alter it have been successful. Of the influence of Old Bulgarian, or Church-Slavonic, on the grammatical forms and vocabulary of Russian, mention will be made later. Here it is only necessary to remind the student that the discrepancies between Russian as it is written and Russian as it is spoken, the illogicalness of Russian orthography, which owes its quaint charm to a sense of historical tradition and recalls that of our own language, and consequently much of the difficulty experienced in mastering Russian, are all due to the fact that the Cyrillic alphabet was not originally made for that language. It is necessary in every language to submit to certain conventions, and it is doubtful whether those which regulate the orthography of the Western Slavonic languages, e. g. Polish and Czech, which use a distorted Latin alphabet, are more rational and less formidable than those which govern Russian. Besides Sanskrit, the only language which has a really scientific alphabet, in which every letter corresponds exactly and without help of accents to the sound it is intended to represent, is Servian, where there was no historical tradition strong enough to obstruct reform. The Cyrillic alphabet is based on that

of the Greek majuscule script but contains important additional signs, the origin of which is not known, representing sounds which never existed in Greek. Its directly Greek origin is apparent in the quite unnecessary incorporation in it of *ἦτα* (η), *ῥα* (ι), and *ῥ* ψιλόν (υ), which all had exactly the same value in Greek as it was spoken in the ninth century, viz. i, and in the necessity of inventing a separate sign for *b* (Б б), because the Greek β was in the ninth century only pronounced as *v*, except after *m*, e.g. *λαμβάνω*, while in Old Bulgarian *b* never followed on a nasal consonant. The Cyrillic characters, which were originally very plain, but had by the eighteenth century assumed somewhat complicated and unwieldy shapes, were by Peter the Great simplified for the requirements of modern printing and at the present time have the following appearance:

## § 2.

## The Alphabet.

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
А а	<i>A a</i>	<i>a</i>	а
Б б	<i>B б</i>	<i>b</i>	бе
В в	<i>B в</i>	<i>v</i>	ве
Г г	<i>Г г</i>	<i>g</i>	ге
Д д	<i>Д д</i>	<i>d</i>	де
Е е	<i>E e</i>	<i>e</i> <sup>1</sup>	е
Ж ж	<i>Ж ж</i>	<i>zh</i>	же
З з	<i>З з</i>	<i>z</i>	зе
И и	<i>И и</i>		и
І і	<i>I i</i>	<i>i</i> <sup>2</sup>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{і съ точкой (= i with} \\ \text{a dot)} \\ \text{ї съ краткой (= i} \\ \text{with a short quantity)} \end{array} \right.$
Ї ѳ <sup>3</sup>	<i>Ї ѳ</i>		
К к	<i>K к</i>	<i>k</i>	ка
Л л	<i>L л</i>	<i>l</i>	эль

<sup>1</sup> After vowels, also after *ъ* and *ь*, both *e* and *ѣ* are transliterated *ya*.

<sup>2</sup> The very common adjectival terminations *-ий* and *-ій* are transliterated by the one letter *y*.

<sup>3</sup> These four letters, *ѣ ѳ ѱ ѿ*, are never initial.

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
М м	<i>М м</i>	<i>m</i>	эмъ
Н н	<i>Н н</i>	<i>n</i>	энъ
О о	<i>О о</i>	<i>o</i>	о
П п	<i>П п</i>	<i>p</i>	по
Р р	<i>Р р</i>	<i>r</i>	эръ
С с	<i>С с</i>	<i>s</i>	эсъ
Т т	<i>Т т</i>	<i>t</i>	те
У у	<i>У у</i>	<i>u</i>	у
Ф ф	<i>Ф ф</i>	<i>f</i>	эфъ
Х х	<i>Х х</i>	<i>kh</i> <sup>1</sup>	ха
Ц ц	<i>Ц ц</i>	<i>ts</i>	це
Ч ч	<i>Ч ч</i>	<i>ch</i>	че
Ш ш	<i>Ш ш</i>	<i>sh</i>	ша
Щ щ	<i>Щ щ</i>	<i>shch</i>	ща
Ъ ъ <sup>2</sup>	<i>Ъ ъ</i>	[omitted in transliteration, cf. § 9]	ерь
Ы ы <sup>3</sup>	<i>Ы ы</i>	<i>y</i>	еры
Ь ь <sup>3</sup>	<i>Ь ь</i>	[usually omitted in transliteration, cf. § 14]	ерь
Ѣ ѣ	<i>Ѣ ѣ</i>	<i>e</i> <sup>3</sup>	ять
Э э	<i>Э э</i>	<i>e</i>	о оборóтное (= <i>turned round</i> )
Ю ю	<i>Ю ю</i>	<i>yu</i> <sup>4</sup>	ю
Я я	<i>Я я</i>	<i>ya</i> <sup>4</sup>	я
Ѧ ѧ	<i>Ѧ ѧ</i>	<i>f</i>	онѧ
Ѳ ѳ	<i>Ѳ ѳ</i>	<i>i</i>	ѣжица

The place of **x** is taken in Russian by **кc**.

<sup>1</sup> Initial **x** is transliterated *h*.

<sup>2</sup> See note 3 on p. 17.

<sup>3</sup> See note 1 on p. 17.

<sup>4</sup> After *i*, *ю* and *я* are transliterated *u* and *a*.

## PRONUNCIATION

### § 3.

#### The Vowels.

There are ten vowels in Russian, five hard and, corresponding to these, five soft or palatalized, and two so-called mute vowels, one hard and one soft. A soft or palatalized vowel means a hard vowel preceded by the sound of the English letter *y* in such a way as to make a monophthong; e.g. the sound contained in the English words *you* or *yew* is really a palatalized *u*. This process of turning a hard into a soft vowel is called palatalization and plays a very important part in Russian. Whenever a soft or palatal vowel is preceded immediately by a consonant, the latter is affected by the *y*-sound of the palatal vowel and coalesces with it, the result being a softened or palatalized consonant. A consonant followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced differently from one followed by a hard vowel, though the effect of the palatal vowel is much greater on some consonants than on others, while the effect of certain palatal vowels is greater than that of others.

Further, a palatal vowel sometimes affects the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, though here again certain palatal vowels particularly affect certain hard vowels.

The pronunciation of the vowels is further influenced by the position of the accent. The Russian is a stress accent and is mobile, i.e. it can fall on any syllable. There are certain rules for the placing of the accent, but as they are positively riddled with exceptions, it is far more difficult to learn them from a book than by ear or by reading accented texts; they have therefore been omitted in this grammar, the accent itself, however, of course being marked in the case of each word mentioned.

### § 4.

#### Hard Vowels.

The five hard vowels are

а   э   и   о   у

and the mute vowel ъ.

## А а = a

when accented and not followed by a palatal vowel (sc. with an intermediate consonant) is pronounced somewhat as in *father* but is more like the *a* in the French *ma* = *my* (f.), or in the German *das Land*. e.g. да = *yes*, рано = *early*, мало = *little* (adverb). When not accented (and not followed by a palatal vowel) it is of the same quality as accented *a* only much shorter, e.g. работа = *work*. If, however, it precedes the accent by more than one syllable, or if, following the accent, it is itself followed by a hard vowel, then it is pronounced like the obscure vowel in English, i.e. like the first *a* in *paternal* or like *er* in *order*, e.g. тараканъ = *cockroach*, облако = *cloud*. Accented and unaccented *a*, when followed in a subsequent syllable by a palatal vowel, is pronounced much sharper, more like *a* in the French word *Espagne*, e.g. in such words as Италия = *Italy* (pronounced as Italians pronounce *Italia*), далеко = *far*, даю = *I give*. For the pronunciation of accented *a* when followed by the soft mute vowel *y*, cf. § 14. Initial *a* is very rare in Russian.

## § 5.

## Ә ә = e

(called in Russian э оборотное = *turned round*) occurs only in two or three genuinely Russian words (in which it is always accented) as a demonstrative prefix, but is common in words of foreign origin. Its pronunciation depends on whether it is followed in the next syllable by a hard or a soft (palatalized) vowel. If the vowel in the following syllable is hard, e.g. in the word это = *this* (N.), э is pronounced very open and has the value of *e*, *ai*, or *a æ* they are pronounced respectively in the English words *ere*, *air*, or *fare* in the South of England. If the vowel in the following syllable is soft (e.g. и = *i*) э is pronounced like *a* in the Northern English *hate*, e.g. эти = *these* (M.F.N.), but with the lips still closer together. In foreign words э has the value of *e* in the English word *end*, e.g. эрмитажъ = *the hermitage*, экземпляръ = *copy, specimen*, Эдуардъ = *Edward*, when unaccented; if accented, it is liable to the same changes as the demonstrative pronominal prefix mentioned above, e.g. поэтъ = *poet*, but поэтъ = *poet* (locative case); in the first case э is pronounced open, as in это, in the second more closed, as in эти.

## § 6.

Ы ы = y

This is the vowel the pronunciation of which causes most difficulty to foreigners, but less to Britons than to Germans or Frenchmen, because a sound very much like it exists in English. Its approximately correct pronunciation is best attained by saying with clenched teeth the syllables containing *y i* in the following English words: *Whitby, till, mill, rill, sill, sandy*. Russian words with similar syllables are, e. g. БЫТЬ = *he was*, ты = *thou*, мы = *we*, рыть = *he dug*, сынъ = *son*, дымъ = *smoke*. The pronunciation of ы is comparatively little affected by being unaccented or by subsequent soft vowels. The ы in e. g. была́, *she was*, scarcely differs at all from that in БЫТЬ. The ы in e. g. были́ = *they were* (where it is followed by the soft vowel и) is pronounced not quite so thickly, but must still be pronounced with clenched teeth. It is important not to confuse the vowel *y* now adopted to transliterate ы in English with the semi-vowel *y* which denotes palatalization. ы is never initial, and cannot stand after к, г, х, ж, ч, ш, or шч after which letters its place is always taken by и. It is important to notice, however, that after ж, ш, and шч the vowel и is pronounced like ы except when followed by ь or by a palatal vowel in the next syllable.

## § 7.

О о = o

has the value, when accented, of the Italian *o* in *Roma*, much opener than the English *o* in *shore*, and more like the *aw* in *saw*. Examples: онъ = *he*, дома́ = *at home*. When unaccented the quality of *o* is entirely changed, and it is pronounced like unaccented *a* (cf. § 4), i. e. like the obscure vowel in English, i. e. like the first *a* in *paternal*, or like the *er* in *order*, e. g. in the words порá = *time*, хоро́шо = *all right*, доро́го = *dear* (adv.), in all of which it sounds much more like an *a* than an *o*. This peculiarity of Russian as spoken in Moscow and to the west and south of that city explains the old English rendering of Москв́а (*Moscow*) by *Muscovy*. The effect of a soft vowel on *o* in a preceding syllable is very marked; the palatalization is anticipated and *o* is pronounced almost like *oi* in English *oil*, e. g. in бо́ли = *pains*.

## § 8.

У у = u

when accented is pronounced like English *oo* in *boot*, e. g. у́тка = *duck*, могу́ = *I can*, у́мный = *clever*; when unaccented it is

shorter, like English *oo* in *book*, e. g. *могутъ* = *they can*, *чугунъ* = *cast-iron*. It is not affected by a subsequent soft vowel as much as are *a*, *э*, and *o*, though slight anticipation of the palatal also takes place. The reason why Russian *у* is written *y* is that the sound could only be represented in Greek by *ou*, which was incorporated in the Cyrillic alphabet as *oy* and for long written thus; these were later made into a compound letter *ѣ*, which in its turn became gradually assimilated to the Western European *y*, but with a different value.

## § 9.

## Ъ ъ

called in Russian *епъ* (pronounced *yare*, the *a* having the value of *a* in the English words *ware*, *fare*, and the *r* being rolled) or *твёрдый знакъ* = *the hard sign*, is the hard mute vowel. This letter, at the time the alphabet was made for the Old Bulgarian language in the ninth century, had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *u*, probably like the *u* in the English word *bulb*, which value it still retains in modern Bulgarian. The letter was adopted by the Russians together with all the rest of the alphabet at the time of their conversion in the tenth century, but there is nothing to prove that there was a sound corresponding to this letter in the Russian as spoken then, though it is probable that at some earlier period the sound had existed also in Russian. In Russian as we know it this letter has never been anything more than a cipher. Its function is a purely negative one, viz. to show that the preceding consonant is not palatalized (softened) but pronounced hard, a fact which the total omission of this letter would indicate equally clearly. In the advertisement columns of the press, in some newspapers, and by people who either make a point of being up-to-date or wish to save time and space, it is frequently omitted, but in all printed books, in the majority of newspapers, and by most people it is still used owing to the authority of tradition and convention. *ъ* is commonest as a terminal, it is never initial, and the convention for the use of medial *ъ* is that in those words which begin with a vowel and are compounded with a preposition ending in a hard consonant, the preposition retains the *ъ*, e. g. *объясненіе* = *explanation* is written *объясненіе*.



## § 10.

## Soft Vowels.

The five corresponding soft or palatal vowels are

я е (ѣ) и (ѣ i v) [ѣ] ю

and the mute vowel ѣ.

**Я я = ya**

is palatalized a and when accented is pronounced like it, e.g. Ялта = *Yalta*. When it is preceded by a consonant it coalesces with it and forms a palatalized consonant, e.g. няня = *nuræ*, where н has the value of *gn* in the French word *Espagne*, дядя = *uncle*, where д is like *dy* in *Rudyard*.

In the syllable immediately preceding or following the accent я retains its quality but is much shorter. When preceding the accent by more than one syllable its quality changes and it is pronounced like a short *i* or *e*, e.g. рядъ = *rank, row*, is pronounced *ryád*, nom. pl. ряды = *the ranks : ryady* (cf. § 6), but рядовой = *a private, ridavói* or *ryedavói*.

я never occurs after ж, ц, ч, ш, or щ.

## § 11.

**Е е and Ъ ъ (or Ь ь)**

е and ѣ in Old Bulgarian represented two distinct sounds, е : ѣ and ѣ : ѣ, but they are both pronounced exactly alike in Russian, where the quantitative differences between ѣ and ѣ have been lost. The letter ѣ (called ять), which has two forms ѣ and ѣ (ѣ and ѣ), is only retained thanks to historical tradition. Like ѣ it has been abandoned in the Government telegraph service, and the words in which its use is etymologically essential have with immense difficulty to be memorized. Unaccented е and ѣ are always pronounced *ye* as in *yet*, e.g. Екатерина = *Catherine*, pron. *Yekatyerína* (i = Italian i); Бѣлградъ = *Belgrade*, pron. *Byelgrád*; ѣда = *food*, pron. *yedá*. Accented, the pronunciation of е and ѣ is affected like that of э (cf. § 5) by the character of the vowel in the following syllable. If followed by a hard vowel in the following syllable, by a hard terminal consonant, or if terminal themselves, they are pronounced like е in similar case, only preceded by the *y* semi-vowel, i.e. very open, as in English *air, fare*, e.g. газѣта = *newspaper*, pron. *gazyéta*; ужѣ = *already*, pron. *uzhé*; ѣду = *I am riding*, pron. *yédu*; мнѣ = *to me*, pron. *mnyé*; ѣмъ = *I eat*, pron. *yém*.

If followed by a soft (or palatalized) vowel accented *e* and *ě* are pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, or like the English word *yea*, but with the lips still closer together, e.g. *razéřb* = *newspaper* (dat. sing.), *éslī* = *if*, *ědetŭ* = *he is riding*, *oŭ* = *to her*, *zďěsŭ* = *here*. The consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ* absorb the *y*-sound inherent in *e* (*ě*), so that when preceded by them *e* sounds like *э*, e.g. *žená* = *wife*, pron. *zhená*; *chelovyékŭ* = *human being*, pron. *chelavyék*; *shén* = *neck*, pron. *shéya*; *shéká* = *cheek*, pron. *shcheká*, though when *ч* and *щ* (which are palatal consonants) are followed by accented *e* (*ě*), the *y*-sound is still audible unless the words are spoken very rapidly, e.g. *chŭmŭ* (inst. sing. of *что* = *what*) = *than*, pron. *chyem*; *chéryezŭ* = *over, through, across*, pron. *chyéryez*; *shchélŭ* = *chink, crack*, pron. *shchyl'el* (*l* = palatalized *l*).

[Ě ě = *yo*]

It is a peculiarity of Russian that accented *e* before a hard consonant or when terminal, although in certain categories of words pronounced as stated above, yet in the majority of cases changes its quality and is pronounced like a Russian *o* (cf. § 7) preceded by *y* semi-vowel. This vowel which is really a palatalized *o* corresponding to hard *o* is not counted as a separate vowel and is therefore here placed in brackets. At one time it was the custom in writing and printing to differentiate this *ě* by placing a diaeresis over it, but as Russians know instinctively when to pronounce *e* as *yo*, such an aid was felt to be unnecessary and is now seldom used. In this book the pronunciation of *e* as *yo* is indicated throughout. As only accented *e* is pronounced *yo*, the accent is in these cases omitted and replaced by the diaeresis. Examples: *seló* = *village*, pron. *syeló*; but *selá* = *villages*, pron. *syóla*; *éslī* = *if* (*и* is a soft vowel and softens or palatalizes the preceding consonant, therefore *e* retains its original value), but *ělka* = *spruce-tree*, pron. *yólka* (*a* is a hard vowel); *veselo* = *cheerful* (adv.), pron. *vyesyelo* (*e* is a soft vowel and palatalizes the *c*, therefore the first *e* retains its original value), but *vesélāyā* = *cheerful* (nom. sing. F.), pron. *vyesyólaya* (because although *я* is soft, yet the vowel which immediately follows accented *e* is hard). Accented *e* followed by a consonant + *ъ* is also pronounced *yo* as *ъ* has the value of a hard vowel, e.g. *vŭlŭ* = *he led*, pron. *vyól*; *něsŭ* = *he brought*, pron. *nyós*; *ěklŭ* = *hedgohog*, pron. *yósh* (cf. § 19).

Terminal accented *e* is always pronounced *yo* except in the one word *yxé* mentioned above, e. g. *oü* = *her* (acc. sing. from *онá*), pron. *yeyó*; *moö* = *my* (nom. acc. sing. N.), pron. *mäyó*. Just as *e*, although followed by a hard consonant and vowel, is nevertheless in many cases not pronounced *yo* (cf. p. 23), so conversely it is pronounced *yo* in many cases where it is not to be expected, i. e. although followed by a soft or palatalized consonant and vowel; such cases are entirely due to analogical influence; e. g. *ведёмъ* = *we are leading*, pron. *vtedyóm*, has by its analogy caused *ведёте* = *you are leading*, to be pronounced *vtedyótye*, although the accented *e* is followed by palatalized consonant and soft vowel *o*; *телёнокъ* = *calf*, pron. *tyelyónak*, and *телёнкъ* = *calf* (loc. sing.), pron. *tyelyónkye*, influenced by the *e* in the nom. and in all the other cases, although followed by the soft vowel *ѣ*; *горюю* = *hill*, pron. *garóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -а), has influenced *землю* = *earth*, pron. *zyemlyóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -я) although followed by the soft vowel *ю* = *yu*. In cases where there is no analogical influence, accented *e* before a soft vowel or palatalized consonant is pronounced *ye*, as would be expected, e. g. *Шеремётевъ* = *Sheryemyétyev*, *моёй* = instr. sing. F. from *моё* = *my*.

The consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ* absorb the *y*-sound inherent in *ѣ*, so that when preceded by them *ѣ* sounds just like *o*, e. g. *жёнъ* (= gen. pl. from *женá* = *wife*), pron. *zhon*; *чёмъ* (loc. sing. from *что* = *what*), pron. *chom*; *шёлъ* (= past tense of *идти* = *to go*), pron. *shol*; *ещё* = *more*, pron. *yeshchó*, colloquially often *ishchó*.

On the analogy of accented *o* followed by a hard consonant and vowel being pronounced *yo*, accented *ѣ* followed by a hard consonant and vowel is also in certain cases pronounced *yo*, a result of the two letters being pronounced identically. *ѣ* is thus pronounced in the following words: *сѣдла* = *saddles* (nom. sing. *сѣдло*), *гнёзда* = *nests* (nom. sing. *гнёздо*), *звѣзды* = *stars* (nom. sing. *звѣзда*), *приобрѣлъ* = *obtained* (past tense from *приобрѣсти*), *цвѣлъ* = *blossomed* (past tense from *цвѣсти*), *надѣванъ* = *put on* (part. pass. from *надѣвать*), and *запечатлѣнъ* = *marked* (part. pass. from *запечатлѣть*). Even accented *я* is in three cases pronounced *yo*, owing again to the confusion caused by the similarity in the pronunciation of unaccented *o*, *ѣ*, and *я*; the three words in question are: *трясъ* = *shook* (past tense from *трясти*), *запрягъ* = *harnessed* (past tense from *запрячь*), and *ей* = *of her* (gen. sing. from *онá*). In

all these cases unaccented *e*, *ѣ*, and *я* are short vowels of very uncertain quality; they vary from *ă* to *ĕ* and *ĭ*, hence the confusion in the pronunciation of certain words where they bear the accent.

## § 12.

И (ѣ *i* v, cf. § 1)

These four letters represent only one sound, which is that of the Italian *i*, and the reasons for their existence and for the continuance of their use are purely conventional and traditional.

и (sometimes called и простое = *simple i*)

is by far the most common of the four; it is used (i) at the beginning of words, if followed by a consonant; (ii) in the middle of words, if preceded and followed by a consonant; (iii) in the middle of words, if it is preceded by a vowel but at the same time begins a fresh syllable itself; and (iv) at the end of words if it stands as a single vowel, or if, preceded by another vowel, it forms a fresh syllable itself.

ѣ,

called и съ краткой (= *i with a short quantity*), is only used after another vowel when it forms one syllable (i.e. a diphthong) with it, therefore never at the beginning of words.

і,

called и съ точкой (= *i with a dot*), is only used before another vowel when it does not form one syllable with it, therefore never at the end of words.

ѵ,

called ижица (= *little yoke*), dim. of *ѵго* = *yoke*), is a transcription of the Greek *υ* (upsilon), which in late Greek acquired the value of short *i*. In modern Russian it is only used in a few ecclesiastical words of Greek origin, and its place even in these is often taken by и.

и being a palatal (or soft) vowel always affects the pronunciation of a preceding consonant, though the *y*-sound which comes between it and a preceding consonant is not always so clearly audible as it is in the case of *e*. The influence of и also extends further back than the consonant immediately preceding it, and affects the pronunciation of the vowel in the preceding syllable (cf. examples of the pronunciation of hard vowels when followed by и in the next syllable, §§ 5, 7). The consonants most

noticeably affected by a subsequent *и* are *т* (*t*) and *д* (*d*), *н* (*n*) and *л* (*l*), cf. the pronunciation of *эти* = *these*, § 5, and of *дитя* = *child*, which is pronounced *dyitya*, the first syllable like *d'ye* in the phrase *how d'ye do*, *они* = *they*, pron. *anyí*; *молѣтва*, pron. *malyítva*. The difficulty which Russians have in pronouncing a clean *i*-sound after *t* and *d* is often to be noticed in their pronunciation of certain French words, such as *dites*, *bottines*, or indeed in that of any foreign words where *t* and *d* are followed by *i*, in which cases they are inclined to insert a *y*-sound between the consonant and the vowel.

It is to be noticed that *и* after the consonants *ж* and *ш* is, except when followed by *ь* or a palatal vowel in the following syllable, pronounced like *ы*, i. e. it becomes hard and loses its palatal quality, e. g. *жиръ* = *fat, grease*, pron. *zhyr*, but *жизнь* = *life*, pron. *zhizn'* (*n'* = palatalized *n*); *широкий* = *broad* (nom. sing. masc.), pron. *shyróki*, but *шире* = *broader*, pron. *shírye*. After *ч* and *щ* on the other hand *и* is always palatal.

Curiously enough initial *и* in Russian has lost its preiotization; in Russian words beginning with *и*, the *и* is pronounced *i* and not *yi* as one would expect, e. g. *ива* = *willow* is pronounced *iva* (*i* = Italian *i*) and not *yiva*. The only exceptions to this are certain cases of the personal pronoun *онъ* = *he*, in which initial *и* is pronounced *yi*: *имъ* = *by him* (pron. *yim*), *ихъ* = *of them* (*yikh*), *ими* = *by them* (*yími*). These contain the original stem of the personal pronoun, *yi-*, whose defective nominative was supplied by those of the demonstrative pronoun *онъ*.

In the syllables *-ий*, *-и́й*, *-о́й*, in which the nom. sing. masc. of all Russian adjectives and of very many Russian family names (which are mostly adjectival in form) end, *-й* is merely the second half of a diphthong and is pronounced like *y* in the English word *boy*. It is to be noticed that in diphthongs such as *ай* and *о́й* occurring in other words the *й* is often barely audible, e. g. *пойди* = *go!* or *come!* sounds like *padyt*, *Миха́йль* = *Michael*, like *Mikhál*.

The effect on the pronunciation of *и* of the absence or the presence of the accent on it is inappreciable; its pronunciation alters merely quantitatively, not qualitatively. Similarly, *и* being a palatal vowel, its pronunciation, except after *ж*, *ш*, is not affected by the presence of another palatal vowel in any subsequent syllable.

The form of the letter  $\pi$  is derived from the Greek  $\pi \eta$  ( $\eta\tau\alpha$ ); it is curious to note that while the Greek  $\pi$  has become  $\pi$  in Russian, the Greek  $\eta$  appears in Russian as  $\eta$  (cf. § 24).

For  $\epsilon$  cf. § 11.

### § 13.

### Ю ю = yu

is pronounced like the English word *you*, i.e. the Italian *u* preceded by the semi-vowel *y*, e.g. люблю (*lyublyú*) = *I love, I like*. The letter itself is a combination of  $\iota$  ( $\iota\omega\tau\alpha$ ) and  $o$  ( $\delta\mu\kappa\rho\acute{o}\nu$ ). Its pronunciation is not affected by the presence or absence of the accent. ю is also used to represent French *u* and German *ü* in transliteration, e.g. Брюссель *Bruzelles*, Нюрнберг *Nürnberg*.

### § 14.

### Ь ь<sup>1</sup>

called in Russian *ерь* or *мягкий знак* = *the soft sign*, is the soft mute vowel. It is a word which is difficult both to transcribe adequately and to pronounce in English, but may be approximately rendered by *yér*, pronouncing the *e* like the *ai* in the English word *waist* and the final *rr* with the tip of the tongue, softening or palatalizing them by adding to them the sound of the semi-vowel *y*, without, however, allowing the additional sound to form an additional syllable. Like  $\tau$ , the hard mute vowel, it once had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *i*, but in course of time its quality changed, it lost its power of forming a syllable, and became merely the sign of palatalization of a preceding consonant. Unlike  $\tau$ , however, it still plays an important part in Russian orthography and pronunciation, and could not easily be dispensed with. It is the only visible indication there is of the softening or palatalization of a preceding consonant. As already mentioned, this softening or palatalization is difficult to explain in the terms of a language, such as English, in which this particular process is comparatively rare; the general effect is to add to the preceding consonant a *y*-sound without allowing the sound thus added to form an additional syllable. The actual sound of a palatalized consonant of course occurs frequently enough in many other languages, e.g. *d* is palatalized

<sup>1</sup> In transliteration  $\mathbf{\text{ь}}$  is popularly omitted, but in this book and for all scientific and bibliographical purposes its presence is indicated by an apostrophe, e.g. царь = *tsar'*.

in the English word *educate*, *n* in the Italian word *ogni*, *l* in the Spanish word *llama*, but the difficulty in Russian is that these palatalized consonants occur as often as not at the end of words, and it is in these cases that their pronunciation is a stumbling-block to foreigners. A further difficulty is caused by the fact that the consonant palatalized by *ь*, or rather *ь* itself, influences the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, causing a throwing-back of the *i*-sound on to the preceding vowel, in German called the *i-Vorschlag*.

Examples of the similar effect of *я* on a hard vowel in a preceding syllable have already been given (cf. §§ 5, 7). A good instance of that produced by *ь* is the name of the Russian town Харьковъ, the *a* of which is pronounced like the *ai* in the word *Cairo*; the first syllable Харь- is pronounced almost like the English word *hire*, rolling the *r*. Another word in which the effect of *ь* on a preceding hard vowel is very marked is царь = *tsar*', in which the *a* is pronounced almost like the *ai* of *Cairo*; another is the name of the Siberian river Обь, commonly written in English *Obi*, but really a monosyllabic word, the pronunciation of which is approximately *Oip* (cf. § 15), *oi* having the value of *oi* in the English *coin*. This throwing-back of the *i*-sound is far more marked in the case of *a* and *o* than in that of the other hard vowels *ы* and *у*, while after *о* the soft mute vowel never occurs. The effect of the soft mute vowel, itself a palatal, on a preceding soft or palatal vowel is most marked in the case of *я* and *е* (*ѣ*), and scarcely noticeable in that of *и* and *ю*; in the only case where it occurs after *ѣ*, i.e. in the 2nd sing. of the present of some verbs, it is pronounced like *ѣ*, i.e. *i* is omitted. An example of *ь* after *я* is the word пять = *five*; in this case the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not so marked as in that of the corresponding hard vowel *a*, but is nevertheless noticeable, while the final *т* is softened and pronounced, e.g. like the *Thi-* in the French name *Thiers*, i.e. it is palatalized, but does not form a syllable. The difference between *я* followed by *ь* and *я* followed by a hard vowel is very noticeable in the two words пять = *five* and нѣтъ = *heel*; in the latter *я* has the value of *ya* in the English words *yard*, *yarn*, while in the former it is nearly as thin as the *ya* in *Yat*, though not quite. *Е* or *ѣ* followed by *ь* is pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, but with lips still closer together, e.g. есть = *there is*, is pronounced

approximately like *yaist*, i. e. like the English *waist*, with a palatalized *t*. The pronunciation of these consonants followed by *ь* is one of the greatest difficulties for Englishmen talking Russian, and the very name of this letter—*ерь*—is one of the hardest words in the language to pronounce correctly.

It is to be noticed that in the 2nd pers. sing. of the present of all verbs, which without exception ends in *-шь*, the *ь* has no effect at all, and the *ш* is pronounced hard, as if it were *шъ*, e. g. *идёшь* = *thou goest*, pron. *idyosh*; *ви́дишь* = *thou seest*, pron. *vidyish*.

*ь* may occur in the middle as well as at the end of words, though it cannot stand at the beginning of a word. Its function is always the same, viz. to palatalize or soften a preceding consonant. Etymologically it always represents the last remains of a lost *i* when it occurs in Russian words, and it is also used frequently in the transcription of foreign words. The word *возьмý* = *I shall take*, is pronounced approximately *vaizmú* or *voizmú* (*ai* as in *Cairo*, *oi* as in *coin*), and is of only two, not three syllables; *семья́* = *family*, is pronounced *syemyá*; *бью́* = *I hit*, is pronounced *byú* (of course as one syllable); *чьё́* = *whose* (N., interrog. pron.), *чйó* (as one syllable), and so on. In a number of neuter nouns ending in *-е*, either *и* or *ь* may be used, and the pronunciation is the same, e. g. *имѣніе* or *имѣніе* = *property* (pronounced *iménye*—usually as three, but sometimes as four syllables). *ь* is used in the transcription of foreign words such as *пьяни́но* = *an upright piano*, pronounced *pianino*, as in Italian, and always after *л* in foreign words before consonants or at the end, to show that the *л* is to be pronounced as single *l* in French and not like the Russian deep *л*, e. g. *Ольденбургъ* = *Oldenburg*, *Брю́ссель* = *Brussels*. It may be added that the effect of *ь* on terminal dentals, nasals, and liquid consonants is far more marked than on labials, palatals, and sibilants. *ь* does not occur after gutturals, which become palatals before it, and is never initial.



## The Consonants.

## § 15.

## Б б = b

is pronounced as in English, except medial б before a voiceless consonant and final б (sc. бъ or бь), when it becomes voiceless, i.e. *p*, e.g. лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*; голубъ = *pigeon*, pron. *gólup*; голубчикъ = *little pigeon*, pron. *galúpchik*.<sup>1</sup>

Before a palatal vowel *b* is palatalized (softened), though it is not as much affected by palatalization as are some other consonants; indeed in rapid speech, when unaccented, the palatalization is sometimes scarcely noticeable, e.g. безъ = *without*, pron. *byez* (one syllable), but in rapid conversation *bez*, though it is of course never wrong to bring out the palatalization. It is always better to over-palatalize than to under-palatalize. Before an accented palatal vowel *b* is of course always palatalized, e.g. победа = *victory*, pron. *pabyéda* (three syllables), бью = *I hit*, pron. *byu* (one syllable).

Before the palatal vowel *и*, however, even when this is accented, the palatalization of б is not expressed, owing to the physical inconvenience involved in doing so, e.g. любитъ = *he loves*, pron. *lyúbit*; убійца = *murderer*, pron. *ubítsa*, though it is very important to remember that the *i* here is pronounced like the English *ee* in e.g. *beet*, never like *i* in the words *bit*, *bill*. As Greek β was pronounced *v* at the time the Cyrillic alphabet was made, a new sign, viz. б, had to be invented to represent *b*.

## § 16.

## В в = v

is pronounced as in English, except medial в before a voiceless consonant and final в (sc. вь or въ), when it becomes voiceless, i.e. *f*, e.g. ровъ = *ditch*, pron. *rof*; любовь = *love*, pron. *lyubóif* (two syllables, cf. § 14); ковшъ = *ladle*, pron. *kofsh*.

Before a palatal vowel *v* is palatalized (softened), following б in this respect (q.v.). As in the case of б, the extent to which the palatalization is noticeable depends very much on whether the palatal vowel is accented or not, while before the palatal vowel *и*

<sup>1</sup> It is worth remarking that the word рубль = *rouble*, is pronounced *rup*, as if it ended in бь.

it is not expressed at all, even when this is accented, e.g. весна́ = *spring (of the year)*, pron. *vyesná*, which in rapid conversation may often sound like *vesná*, but вера́ = *faith*, always *vyéra*, the *yer* of which is pronounced like *ierre* in the French *Pierre*; вѣю́ = *I wind*, pron. *vju*, like the English *view*; вино́ = *wine*, pron. *vinó* (*i* = Italian *i*).

In the transliteration of foreign words beginning with *eu-* and *auto-* the Greek *v* is in Russian represented by в, e.g. Евге́ний = *Eugen*, pron. *Yevgyéni*, автомоби́ль = *motor-car*, pron. *astomobl*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

## § 17.

## Г г = g

is pronounced in various ways. Initial *r* is always hard, like *g* in the English *go*, when followed by a vowel or by the consonants в, л, п, н, ж, з. In the word гдѣ́ = *where*, *r* is usually pronounced like a voiced *kh*, and may be transcribed *gh*—*ghdyé*, though sometimes here also as hard *g* or even as *k*. Г is also pronounced *gh* in the vocative of Господь́ = *Lord*: Господи́, pron. *ghóspodyi*.

Medial *r* before a voiceless consonant is pronounced *kh*, like *ch* in the Scotch *loch*, e.g. ко́гти = *claws*, pron. *kókhtyi*; before a voiced consonant it is pronounced usually *gh*, but also sometimes *g* or *k*, e.g. ко́гда = *when*, pron. *kaghdá*, but also *kakdá* and *kagdá*.

Medial *r* before a vowel is hard, e.g. мно́го = *much*, pron. *mnóga*, but is as often as not pronounced *gh*, *mnógha*, мо́гу = *I am able*, is pronounced *magú*, but as frequently *maghú*. In the oblique cases of the word Бо́гъ = *God*, *r* is always pronounced *gh*, e.g. Бо́гу = *to God*, *bóghu*. In the genitive singular masculine and neuter of all adjectives (in which connexion it is important to remember that most Russian family names are adjectives) and declinable pronouns, -aro, -ero, -oro, and -яro, *r* is pronounced *v*, e.g. е́ро = *of him*, pron. *yevó*; Толсто́ро = *of Tolstói*, pron. *Talstóva*. The reason for this is that the Old Bulgarian orthography adopted by the Russians was never altered by the latter to correspond to Russian pronunciation, which in this case differed from that of Old Bulgarian. It is a good instance to quote when Russians accuse English of being written one way and spoken another. It is important to remember that the word мно́го = *much* (quoted above) is not a genitive but an indeclinable pronoun, and is therefore not affected by this rule; likewise the negative немно́го = *little*.

Final *г* (sc. *гъ*) is always voiceless, i.e. *k*, except in the word *Богъ* = *God*, when it is pronounced *kh* as in Scotch *loch*, e.g. *моръ* = *I was able*, pron. *mok*, but *Богъ* always *bokh*.

*г* cannot be followed by *ы* (which it turns into *я*) nor by *ь*; *г* followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced hard, but with a *y*-sound immediately afterwards, e.g. по *Волгѣ* (= dat. of *Волга*) = *along the Volga* (pron. *Vólgye*), *географія* = *geography*, pron. *gyeográfia*, but in rapid speech the *y* is scarcely noticeable. In the transliteration of foreign names and words *г* is always used to represent *h*, a quaint convention established by Peter the Great; *х* would have been in most cases more rational. The resulting phenomena are often bizarre, e.g. В. Гюго = *V. Hugo*, Гаруйтъ-Гукъ-фанъ-Голландъ = *Harwich-Hook of Holland*, Гүль = *Hull* (N.B. *not*, as might be thought, *Goole*); гидрофобія = *hydrophobia*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 18.

Д *д* = *d*

The pronunciation of the dental consonants in particular is affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial *д* before a hard vowel, also initial and medial *д + в, л, ж, н, р* is very frequently, i.e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth. The sound produced is more like the Irish *d*, rather than the ordinary English *d*, which is of course not *inter-dental*, but *cerebral*, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches not the teeth but the roof of the mouth. On the other hand, no aspirate is audible in the Russian *д* before a hard vowel. In the pronunciation of some Russians the *inter-dental* quality of the *д* before a hard vowel is not so noticeable, but as a general rule it is strictly *inter-dental* as opposed to our purely *cerebral d*. It may be remarked that it is physically easier to give the full value to the hard vowels *а, о, ы, ѣ* after an *inter-dental* than after a *cerebral d*, and therefore the *inter-dental* pronunciation for a foreigner is doubly important.

Initial and medial *д* before a palatal (soft) vowel is, on the other hand, not *inter-dental* but strongly palatalized, i.e. pronounced like *dy* in, e.g. the English *d'you* (*think*), e.g. дядя = *uncle*, pron. *dyádyá* (only two syllables), дѣло = *matter*, pron. *dyélo*, Одѣсса

— *Odessa*, pron. *Adyessa*, да́та = *child*, pron. *dyityá*. This explains how it is that Russians, although such good linguists, sometimes mispronounce foreign words, e.g. *Dickens*, often pronounced *Dyickens*, *Divonne* = *Dyivonne*, &c. Medial д followed by the palatal vowel ь + another consonant is difficult for foreigners to pronounce, e.g. седьмо́й = *seventh*, is only a disyllable, pron. *syedymói*, in which *dy* has the same quality as the *d'y* in *d'you*; it is important to remember that it is neither English *d* nor English *j*. In the imperatives бу́дьте = *be* (2nd pl.) and са́дьте = *be seated* (2nd pl.) the дь becomes as if it were lost in the т, which is strongly emphasized as if it were тт, so that these words (both very common) are pronounced búttye (*u* of course as in Italian), syáttye.

Final д (sc. дь) becomes voiceless, i. e. *t*, but as т is a hard vowel д still remains inter-dental, i. e. with the tip of the tongue touching both rows of teeth, e.g. годъ = *year*, pron. *got*. Final д (sc. дь) is pronounced like palatalized *t*, e.g. like *t y* in *let you*, e.g. бу́дь = *be* (2nd sing.), pron. *búty*, which is of course a monosyllable, the *y* here only representing palatalization. In the transliteration of foreign names дж is used to represent *j*, e.g. Джэмзъ = *James*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 19.

Ж ж = *zh*

is pronounced like *s* in the English word *measure*, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, sc. жь or жъ, when it becomes voiceless itself, i. e. *sh*. The effect of a palatal vowel on medial ж is to make it slightly thinner (the *y*-sound is scarcely noticeable), something between *z* and *zh*, though nearer to *zh* than to *z*. Examples: жена́ = *wife*, pron. *zhená*, жа́жда = *thirst*, pron. *zházhdá*, мужи́ки = *peasants*, pron. *muzhíkí*, мужъ́ = *husband*, pron. *mush*, ло́жка = *spoon*, pron. *lóshka*. For the pronunciation of н, е, and ё after ж cf. §§ 11, 12. ы cannot stand after ж, which turns it into и. ь after final ж has the effect on preceding vowels described in § 14. ж is always used to represent French *j*, e.g. журна́ль = *magazine* (from French *journal*), and with д (дж) to represent English *j* (cf. § 18). The form of this letter is of unknown origin.

### § 20.

З з = *z*

is pronounced as in English, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, i. e. зь or зъ, when it becomes voiceless

itself, i. e. *s*, as in *sun*. The effect of a palatal vowel on *з* when medial is merely to soften it by adding to it a *y*-sound, but in an unaccented syllable this is scarcely noticeable. Examples: злой *malicious*, pron. *zloi*, зеркало = *mirror*, pron. *zyérkala*, зима = *winter*, pron. *zimá*, указъ = *decree*, pron. *ukas* (*u* = Italian *u*), but указъ о зѣмствѣ = *a decree about the zemstvo*, pron. *ukáz a zyémstvyé*. In words where *з* is followed by *ж* (q. v.) the latter absorbs the former, e. g. вѣжи = *reins*, pron. *vózhi*, with emphasis on the *zh*. Whenever the prepositions раз- (= *dis*), воз- (= *up*), and низ- (= *down*), which are only used in composition, are compounded with a word beginning with a voiceless consonant (except *c*), the *з* is pronounced and written as *c*; e. g. расколъ = *dissent*, pron. *raskól*, восходъ = *ascent*, pron. *vaskhót*, but рассказъ = *tale*, pron. *raskás*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

## § 21.

К к = *k*

is pronounced as in English, except before *к*, *г*, and *т*, when it is usually pronounced *kh* (i. e. like *ch* in Scotch *loch*). Examples: какъ = *how*, pron. *kak*; кѣмъ = *by whom*, pron. *kyem* (one syllable), but къ кому = *to whom*, pron. *khkamú* (two syllables); кто = *who*, pron. *khto*. *к* cannot be followed by *ы* (which it turns into *и*) nor by *ь*.

## § 22.

Л л = *l*

is pronounced in two very distinct ways, according to whether it is followed by a hard or a soft (palatal) vowel. Before a hard vowel, or before a consonant followed by a hard vowel, it is pronounced as in Yorkshire or Scotland, i. e. with the tip of the tongue curling upwards, leaving a space between the tongue and the roof of the mouth. This is often called guttural *l*, but it is really rather cerebral than guttural. Many Russians pronounce it without touching, or barely touching, the palate with the tip of the tongue, so that it sounds like *w*. The Polish deep *l*, written in Polish *ł*, is almost always thus pronounced. Those Englishmen who find it difficult to pronounce the deep Russian *l* as *l*, can solve the difficulty and increase the chances of being mistaken for real Russians, by fearlessly pronouncing *л* before hard vowels like English *w*, e. g. лампа = *lamp*, pron. *lámpa*, *wámpa* (*a* of course as in Italian); луна = *moon*, pron. *luná*, *wuná*; лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*, *wop*; лось = *reindeer*, pron. *lois*, *wois*; ѣлка = *Christmas-tree*,

pron. *yólka*, *yóuka*; *лгунъ* = *liar*, pron. *lgun*, *wgun*; *былъ* = *he was*, pron. *byl*, very much like the English word *bill*, or *byu*, *biu*; *была* = *she was*, pron. *bylá*, or *bywá* (*y* here having the sound of *y* in *Whitby*).

Before a soft (palatal) vowel, on the other hand, *л* is pronounced like Italian *gl* in e.g. *degli*, or like Spanish *ll* in e.g. *llama*, i.e. it is palatal, formed by pressing the whole front part of the tongue against the palate. E.g. *лѣдъ* = *ice*, pron. *lyot*; *лѣпа* = *lime-tree*, pron. *lyípa*; *лѣю* = *I pour*, pron. *lyu*; *люди* = *people*, pron. *lyúdyi*. Final *лъ* is rather difficult for Englishmen to pronounce, but the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, contained in the *л*, on to the preceding vowel is very marked and makes it easier, e.g. *боль* = *pain*, pron. very much like *boil*, but giving the *л* the value of Italian *gl*. *Лъ* followed by other consonants is still more difficult to pronounce, but it is made easier by running the preceding syllable right into it, e.g. *на лѣдѣ* = *on the ice*, is pronounced approximately *naíldú*, *ai* having the value of *ai* in *Cairo*, *нелѣзи* = *it is impossible*, pron. *nyalezýá* in two syllables, *-yale-* like the American *Yale*, and *л* having the value of Italian *gl*. *Лъ* followed by a consonant and a palatal vowel is also pronounced like Italian *gl*, e.g. *лже-прорѣкъ* = *false prophet*, pron. *lzheprarók*. Foreign names ending in *l* are written in Russian with final *лъ*, e.g. *Брюссель* = *Brussels*, but foreign words which are regarded as having become Russian are written with *ль*, e.g. *капиталь* = *capital* (sc. money).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 23.

**М м = m**

is pronounced as in English. Final *мъ* is difficult to pronounce; it is of course softened, just as *m* in the English word *mew*, but in rapid conversation this is scarcely noticeable. It is easier for foreigners to express palatalization by emphasizing the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e.g. *семь* = *seven*, pron. *syame*, *syaim*, like the English words *same*, *aim*; *восемь* = *eight*, pron. *vóisyame*, which in rapid conversation becomes *vóisim* or *vóisyem*. In the syllable *ми* the *y*-sound is very difficult to express after *м*, even for Russians, and is therefore inaudible, e.g. *мимо* = *past* (prep.), pron. *mima*.

### § 24.

**Н н = n**

is pronounced as in English. The same applies to final *нь* as to final *мъ*; the sound *нь* is, however, more familiar to Englishmen as

it is exactly the same as French and Italian *gn*, e. g. *Boulogne* is written in Russian Булонь. In Russian words ending in нь the palatalization is if anything more marked than in those with final мь, and the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is equally marked, e. g. конь = *steed*, is pronounced *koigne*, like *Boulogne*, though in rapid conversation it sounds like the English word *coin* pronounced very short, just as *Boulogne* spoken by many Englishmen sounds like *boo-loin*. In the syllable нн the *y*-sound must always be expressed, though it is difficult for Englishmen to do so, e. g. съ ними = *with them*, is pronounced *snými*, -*yi*- having the sound of the English word *ye*.

The Russian Н is derived from the Greek Ν. The reason why it is in Russian written Н is that while the middle stroke of our *N* has remained sloping, the middle stroke of the same letter in Russian has become horizontal; in Old Bulgarian the letter was written *N* and in Russian it has become *H*.

## § 25.

Н н = *p*

is pronounced as in English. Palatalized н, i. e. н before a palatal vowel, is pronounced simply *py*-, as in English *piano*, except in the syllable нн, where it is almost impossible to express the *y*-sound, e. g. перо = *pen*, pron. like the French word *Pierrot*, but шель = *he drank*, pron. like the English word *peel*. Final нь is very rare; it is difficult for an Englishman to express the *ь*, but its effect on the preceding vowel is obvious, e. g. цѣнь = *chain*, pron. *tsyape* (one syllable), -*ape* as in English *tape*, but цѣнь = *flail*, pron. *tsyep*, as in English *tepid*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

## § 26.

Р р = *r*

is pronounced as in Scotland; it is always rolled with the tip of the tongue, and never under any circumstances pronounced as in English or German. Exactly the same applies to palatalized *p* and to рх as to palatalized *n* and нн, e. g. Рязань = *Ryazan*, pron. *Ryazagne* (-*gne* as in French); but Рига = *Riga*, *ri*- as in English *reel*, but rolling the *r*. Medial and final рь is difficult to pronounce, but is made easier by the marked throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e. g. царь = *tsar*\*, pron. *tsair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in *Cairo*), Харьковъ = *Harkov*, pron. *Hairkaf* (*ai* again as in *Cairo*), ерь = the name of the letter *ь*, pron. *yair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in the English word *aim*),

but *еръ* = the name of the letter *ъ*, pron. *yare*, rolling the *r* (like the English word *fare*).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 27.

**С с = s**

is pronounced *always* like English voiceless *s* in e. g. *second*. Palatalized *c* is simply *s* + the *y*-sound, which latter is, however, inaudible in the syllable *си*, e. g. *сѣмя* = *seed*, pron. *syém̐ya*, but *сила* = *strength*, pron. *s̐ila* or *s̐iwa*; *сидѣ* = *I sit*, pron. *sizh̐ú*. The same applies to medial and final *съ* as to *ръ* and *нь*, e. g. *моська* = *pug*, pron. *móiska*, *oi* as in the English word *moist*, though the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not always so easy, e. g. *Русь* = the old name of Russia, pron. *Rúis*, in one syllable, *u* as *oo* in English, with a slight *i*-sound between the *u* and *s*, which gives the *s* a somewhat minced or affected character. After a palatal vowel the effect of final *ь* is only noticeable in the attenuation of the *s*, e. g. *боюсь* = *I fear* (where *-сь* is the reflexive pronoun), pron. *bayús*; *моюсь* = *I wash myself*, pron. *móyus*; in these cases the *y*-sound after the final *c* is distinctly audible, but very difficult for foreigners to reproduce.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 28.

**Т т = t**

The pronunciation of *т*, as of *д* (q. v.), is particularly affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial *т* before a hard vowel, also initial and medial *т + в, к, л, м, н, р*, also final *-тъ*, is very frequently, i. e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i. e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth, or at any rate it is dental, i. e. the tongue touches the tops of the upper teeth, and not cerebral as in English. As in the case of *д*, most foreigners will find that it is easier to give their full value to the hard vowels after a dental, than after a cerebral *т*; it is also far easier to roll the *r* after dental than after cerebral *д* and *т*, e. g. *три* = *three*, must on no account be pronounced like the English word *tree*, but like our *three* without *h* and rolling the *r*.

Initial and medial *т* before a palatal vowel is, on the other hand, not inter-dental or dental, but strongly palatalized, i. e. pronounced like *ty* in e. g. *let you*, e. g. *тѣло* = *body*, pron. *tyélo* or *tyéwo*; *итѣ* = *to go (on foot)*, pron. *ityí*; *тебѣ* = *to thee*, pron. *tyebýé*; *тѣмнo* = *dark*, (adv.), pron. *tyómna*.



Initial or medial **т** followed by **ь** + a consonant is difficult to pronounce, e. g. **тьма** = *darkness*, is only one syllable, pron. *tymá*. Final **ть** is pronounced in the same way and is if anything more difficult for most beginners; it is of very common occurrence, as it is the ordinary infinitival ending, e. g. **говорить** = *to speak*, pron. *gavarítty*, in three syllables, the *y* of course not forming a syllable, but merely palatalizing the **т**. This is very important, as mispronunciation alters the meaning of the word, e. g. **говорить** (hard) = *he speaks* (3rd sing.), pron. *gavarítty*.

The pronunciation of final **дь** and **ть** is made more difficult by the fact that there is not with them, as with final **ль**, **рь**, &c., any throwing-back of the *i*-sound on to the preceding vowel, e. g. **дѣлать** = *to do*, must *not* be pronounced *dyélait* but *dyélaty* or *dyéwaty* (in two syllables with palatalized *t*); **мать** = *mother*, pron. *maty* in one syllable with palatalized *t*. For Englishmen in particular it is important to remember that final **ть** is neither *t* nor *ts* nor *ch*, but palatalized, just as it is in the English word *actual*; the difficulty is to pronounce the palatalized *t* at the end of a word with no vowel following and without letting it form an extra syllable.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek; the italic form *m* (and that of the written capital) is the result of the gradual lengthening downwards of the two ends of the bar across the top of the letter **т** *и*.

## § 29.

Ф ф = *f*

is pronounced as in English, and occurs only in words of foreign origin, e. g. **фотографъ** = *photographer*, pron. *fatógraf*.

This letter is derived directly from the Greek.

## § 30.

X x = *kh*

is pronounced like *ch* in Scotch or German *loch* by some, but by others more like the English aspirate *h*. **X** cannot be followed by **и** (which it turns into **и**) nor by **ь**. It is always used to render the Greek **χ** (from which it is derived), e. g. **археологія** = *archaeology*.

## § 31.

Ц ц = *ts*

is pronounced as in English *lots*, e. g. **Царѣцѣнъ** (lit. *Tsarítsa's* or *Empress's*), a town on the Volga, pron. *Tsarítsyn*; **Царское Село**

(lit. *Tsar's* or *Emperor's village*), a town near Petrograd, pron. *Tsárskoye Syeló*. It is also used to render the Latin *c* before *e*, *i*, and *ae*, e. g. Цицеронъ = *Cicero*, Цѣзарь = *Caesar*.

The form of the letter is of unknown origin.

### § 32.

Ч ч = *ch*

is pronounced as in English *church*, except that it is a palatal consonant, whereas ours is not. The result of this is that there is a tendency to pronounce even the hard vowels when they follow ч as if they were palatal, though orthography forbids the use of я and ю after ч; in practice this palatal pronunciation of the hard vowels is only noticeable when the latter are accented, e. g. чýдо = *wonder*, *miracle*, is pronounced almost as if it were чýдо, but in the plural чудесá the *y*-sound is not audible. ы cannot stand after ч, and it is important to remember that и after ч is pronounced like the *ee* in *cheese*, not like the *i* in *chill*, e. g. in the word чýсто = *clean* (N., sing. and adverb). е (ѣ) after ч is pronounced *ye* if accented, e. g. Чѣховъ (the dramatic author), pron. *Chyékhof*, but when unaccented the *y*-sound is scarcely audible (cf. § 11). ь after final ч has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

### § 33.

Ш ш = *sh*

is pronounced as in the word *English*. ы cannot stand after ш, which turns it into и. For the pronunciation of *e*, *и*, and *ѳ* after ш cf. §§ 11, 12. ь after final ш has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14, but it is important to remember that the 2nd sing. of the presents of all verbs which without exception ends in -шь is always pronounced as if it were written -шь.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

### § 34.

Щ щ = *shch*

is broadly speaking pronounced as in *Ashchurch*, but it is to be noticed that it is pronounced in various ways by various people. By many it is pronounced *shch* as described, but by many others like a very emphatic *sh* with a palatal quality; thus the word щи = *cabbage-soup* (a national dish) is by some pronounced *shchi* (*i* as in *cheese*), by others *shyi* (in one syllable, the *i* as in *cheese*).

Being a compound of *и* and *ч* it is made palatal by the palatal quality inherent in *ч*, and thus all vowels are pronounced after it as they are after *ч*, cf. § 32. *и* cannot stand after *и*, which turns it into *и*. *ь* after final *и* has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter in Old Bulgarian was *ѣ*, that is to say a *и* superimposed on a *т*, and in that language it had the value of *sh*, which it still retains in Modern Bulgarian.

## § 35.

⦿ *е* = *f*

is the Greek *θ* and is called in Russian *ѣта* (pron. *fitá*). It is only used in words and names of Greek origin, e.g. *Ѣма* = *Thomas*, pron. *Famá*; *Ѣодѣсія* = *Theodosia* (a town in the Crimea, pron. *Feodósia*).

The Greek *ξ* is represented in Russian by *кс*, e.g. *Александръ* = *Alexander*, *аксіома* = *axiom*.

## PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

§ 36. In the foregoing, §§ 4-35, the ordinary English letters only have been used to render the pronunciation of the Russian vowels and consonants. This has been done for the sake of general utility, but it must be understood that such a method of transcription is not only unscientific but also only approximately accurate. Appended is a list of the Russian sounds already enumerated and described together with their approximate equivalents in the signs currently used for phonetic spelling in England for the benefit of those students who are acquainted with the latter; needless to say that in a work of this size neither the list of Russian sounds nor that of their equivalents can pretend to include all the variations of pronunciation which occur, variations which are largely conditioned by the varying rates of spoken speech.

*Russian  
letter.*

*Phonetic  
transcription.*

<i>а</i>	{ followed by hard vowel or final }	<i>ɑ</i>
<i>”</i>	{ followed by a palatal vowel or by <i>ь</i> }	<i>ʌ</i>

## PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

<i>Russian letter.</i>	<i>Phonetic transcription.</i>
а { when pronounced like the } { obscure vowel in English }	ə
э followed by a hard vowel	ɛ
„ followed by a palatal vowel	ɐ
ы	ɪ
о when accented	ɔ
„ when unaccented	ə
у	u
я	ja or ja
е (ѣ)	jɛ or jɐ
и	i or ji
ѳ	jɔ (after ж, ч, ш, щ = ɔ)
ю	ju
ь	,
б	b
в	v
г	g
д	d
ж	ʒ
з	z
к	k
л	l
м	m
н	n
п	p
р	r
с	s
т	t
ф	f
х	x
ц	ts
ч	tʃ
ш	ʃ
щ	ʃ'tʃ' or ʃtʃ' or ʃ'
ѳ	f

## THE ACCENT

§ 87. As has already been remarked, the accent in Russian is mobile, i. e. it may fall on any syllable. There are certain rules which govern it in certain cases, but their value is discounted by the existence of numerous exceptions. Correct accentuation is one of the greatest difficulties that Russian presents to the foreigner, as a misplaced accent may lead to disconcerting errors; at the best a foreigner who puts the accent on the wrong syllable will merely not be understood at all. The difficulty is increased by the fact that neither in writing nor in print is the accent marked, and in addition by the fact that in many cases words, though spelt identically, have quite different meanings according to where the accent is placed, e. g. мука = *flour*, but мѹка = *torment*; плачу́ = *I pay*, but пла́чу = *I weep*; воды = *waters* (nom. pl.), but водѣ = *some water* (gen. sing.), and many others.

Although the Russians talk much more musically than the English, the Russian accent is not a musical, but a stress accent. The accented syllable is always very strongly emphasized (in contrast to French), and the unaccented syllables consequently lose in some cases the full value of their vowels, e. g. unaccented о is always pronounced *a* (like our *u* in *but*), e. g. до́рога = *road*, pron. *daróga*; unaccented я like *i* or *e*, e. g. пятьдеся́тъ = *fifty* (lit. *cing dizaines*), pron. *pidyesyát*. It should be mentioned that in a number of cases the same word is often accented differently by different but equally well educated Russians, e. g. тѣ́мно and те́мнó = *dark* (adv.), и́наче and ина́че = *otherwise*, во́рота and ворота́ = *gateway*, and also that the accent is often withdrawn altogether from the noun by a preposition governing it, e. g. за́ руку = *by the hand* (ру́ку = acc. sing. of рука́ = *hand*), на́ голову = *on the head* (сc. *on to*; го́лову = acc. sing. of голова́ = *head*, во-вре́мя = *in good time* (the hyphen is used to distinguish it from во время + gen. = *during* . . .), and sometimes from the past tense of a verb by the negative particle, e. g. не́ быть, не́ было = *was not*, не́ дать = *did not give*, though such cases both as regards nouns and verbs are the exception rather than the rule.

Failing the help *vis à vis* of a competent teacher, beginners are recommended to read only accented texts, of which many have been published, in order to get used to the accent and also to read poetry, where the position of the accent is always indicated by the metre.

A list of accented texts published is given in the bibliography at the beginning of this book. By observing carefully the accents on the most commonly used cases and parts of the most commonly used nouns, verbs, &c., the student will learn where to place the accent far more quickly than by learning rules and exceptions which always contain forms that are rarely used. The accent is invariably marked in all dictionaries, even in those Russian dictionaries printed in Russia for the exclusive use of Russians, but in Russian grammars printed in Russia it is usually omitted.

## THE DECLENSION OF THE SUBSTANTIVES

§ 38. There are three genders in Russian—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; and two numbers—Singular and Plural, though traces of the Dual are numerous in the declensions.

There is no definite or indefinite article in Russian corresponding to our *the*, *a*, *an*. The context is usually sufficient to indicate which is meant, whether *the* or *a*; otherwise recourse must be had to the demonstrative or indefinite pronouns. The demonstrative pronoun is sometimes used as a definite article after the noun which it qualifies, though only in the colloquial language (cf. § 48).

There are six cases in Russian, viz. *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Instrumental*, and *Locative*. This last is sometimes called the *Prepositional*, because it is never used except after one of the five prepositions: *о* = *concerning*, *въ* = *in*, *на* = *on*, *при* = *in the presence of*, *по* = *after*. The *Instrumental* can be used without a preposition, when it denotes the instrument or agent by means of which anything is done. It is also used after certain prepositions, and then loses the meaning which the name implies. For the remains of the *Vocative* in modern Russian cf. § 39, Obs. 9.

§ 39. Masculine Nouns having the Nom. Sing. in -ъ, -ь, -й.

Almost all masculines end in -ъ, -ь, or -й. All nouns which end in -ъ and -й are masculine.

All nouns which end in -ъ are called *hard*, those ending in -ь or -й *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel, begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

A peculiarity of the masculine nouns is that in the case of animate things the acc. sing. is the same as the gen. sing., while in the case of inanimate things it is the same as the nom. sing.; this rule applies also to the plural.

Examples: (hard) столъ = *table*; народъ = *people, nation*; (soft) царь = *tsar*; олень = *deer*; сарай = *coach-house*.

*Singular.*

N.	столъ	народъ	царь	олень
G.	стола	народа	царя	оленья
D.	столу	народу	царю	олёню
A.	столъ	народъ	царя	оленья
I.	столомъ	народомъ	царёмъ	олёнемъ
L.	столѣ	народѣ	царѣ	олёнѣ

*Plural.*

N.	столы	народы	цари	олени
G.	столовъ	народовъ	<u>царей</u>	<u>олёней</u>
D.	столамъ	народамъ	царямъ	олёнямъ
A.	столы	народы	<u>царей</u>	<u>олёней</u>
I.	столами	народами	царями	олёнями
L.	столѣхъ	народѣхъ	царяхъ	олёняхъ

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N.	сарай	сарай
G.	сарая	сарайовъ
D.	сараяю	сараямъ
A.	сарай	сарай
I.	сараемъ	сараями
L.	сарайѣ	сараяхъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The acc. sing. and plur. of all masculine nouns is the same as the nom. sing. and plur. in the case of inanimate, and the same as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate things: thus the acc. sing. of *сто́лъ* is *сто́лъ*, but of *ца́рь*—*ца́ря*.

2. The masc. nouns in -ъ have borrowed the ending of the gen. plur. -ей (e. g. *ца́рей*) from another declension.

3. The nom. acc. pl. of all masc. nouns in -къ, -гъ, -хъ, -чъ, -щъ, -жъ, -шъ, end in -ки, -ги, -хи, -чи, -ши, -жи, -ши (i. e. take -и instead of -ы), because *ы* cannot stand after a guttural or after *ч, щ, ж, or ш*, e. g. *ма́льчикъ* = *boy*, nom. pl. *ма́льчики*; *но́жъ* = *knife*, nom. pl. *но́жи*; *клю́чъ* = *key*, nom. pl. *клю́чи*.

4. The inst. sing. and gen. plur. of all masc. nouns in -жъ, -чъ, -шъ, -щъ, end respectively in -емъ (-ёмъ if accented) and -ей, e. g. *това́рищъ*, = *companion*, inst. sing. *това́рищемъ*, gen. pl. *това́рищей*; *но́жъ* = *knife*, inst. sing. *но́жомъ* (pron. *nazhóm*), gen. pl. *но́жей*; *клю́чъ* = *key*, inst. sing. *клю́чемъ*, gen. pl. *клю́чей*; *экипа́жъ* = *carriage*, inst. sing. *экипа́жемъ*, gen. pl. *экипа́жей*. All these nouns were originally soft and have only latterly become hard. In the same way the nouns ending in -цъ were originally soft; of these, those which have the last syllable accented have become hard throughout, e. g. *оте́цъ* = *father*, makes inst. sing. *отце́мъ* and gen. plur. *отце́въ*, but those which are not accented on the last syllable still make their inst. sing. in -емъ, and their gen. plur. in -евъ, e. g. *мѣ́сяцъ* = *moon or month*, inst. sing. *мѣ́сяцемъ* and gen. plur. *мѣ́сяцевъ*.

5. A large number of words which contain *е* or *о* in the last syllable of the nom. sing. lose this vowel in the oblique cases when, while on the *е* or *о* in the nom., the accent afterwards passes to the case-ending, and sometimes also when the accent throughout is on the first syllable; the emphasis on the accented syllable is so strong that the weak vowel of the unaccented syllable disappears, e. g. *оте́цъ* = *father*, gen. sing. *отца́*, dat. sing. *отцу́*, nom. pl. *отца́*; *за́мокъ* = *castle*, *за́мка*; *дворе́цъ* = *palace*, gen. sing. *дворца́*; *песко́къ* = *sand*, *песка́*; *кусо́къ* = *piece*, *куса́*; *де́нь* = *day*, gen. sing. *дня́*. In those words containing *ле-*, i. e. soft *л*, *е* becomes *ь* to show that the *л* remains soft, e. g. *ло́дь* = *ice*, gen. sing. *лы́да*, but *лобъ* = *fore-head*, gen. sing. *лба́*, with hard *л*. The *е* is retained in cases where



its omission would cause an excessive accumulation of consonants, e. g. мертвецъ = *corpse* makes gen. sing. мертвеца. A few words in -ей make gen. sing. in -ья, dat. in -ью, nom. pl. -ьи, &c.; e. g. ручей = *stream*, gen. sing. ручья, also воробей = *sparrow*, муравей = *ant*, and соловей = *nightingale*, nom. pl. соловьи, &c.

Words in -имъ make their gen. sing. in -има, dat. sing. -иму, &c.; e. g. займъ = *loan*, gen. займа; боецъ = *fighter*, gen. бойца, and заяцъ = *hare*, by analogy, makes зайца.

In other cases where the same process apparently occurs the e and o have merely been inserted in the nom. sing. to make pronunciation easier, e. g. вѣтеръ = *wind*, gen. sing. вѣтра; огонь = *fire*, огня; уголь = *corner*, угла, уголь = *coal*, угля.

6. Masculine nouns denoting divisible matter have a gen. sing. in -у (-ю) when the gen. is used in a partitive sense, e. g. фунтъ чаю = *a pound of tea*, from чай = *tea*; мало народу = *few people* (lit. *little of people*), but мнѣніе народа = *the opinion of the people*, though this gen. has become usual in a number of cases where there is no idea of partition, e. g. съ виду = *by sight*, безъ толку = *without sense*, съ низу = *from below*, съ верху = *from above*, отъ роду = *from one's birth*, изъ дому = *out of the house* (or *home*).

7. Several nouns have a loc. sing. in -ѣ, always accented, which is used after the prepositions въ = *in* and на = *on*, e. g. въ саду = *in the garden*, на мосту = *on the bridge*, въ . . . году = *in the year . . .*, въ лѣсу = *in the forest*, на берегу = *on the bank* (or *shore*), на лугу = *in the meadow*, на краю = *on the edge* (from край), въ углу = *in the corner* (nom. уголъ), на полу = *on the floor*, and others. Cf. § 68.

N.B. After the prepositions о (объ) = *about* and при = *near* the loc. in -ѣ is used.

8. Several nouns have a nom. pl. in -и, -я, which is always accented. This is really the old nom. dual, but its use has extended from the dual to the plural; e. g. глазъ = *eye*, nom. pl. глаза; берегъ = *bank*, nom. pl. берега = *the two banks of a river*, but also = *the shores of the ocean*; рогъ = *horn*, nom. pl. рога; бокъ = *side*, nom. pl. бока; also вечеръ = *evening* has nom. pl. вечера; домъ = *house*, дома; голосъ = *voice*, голоса; колоколъ = *bell*, колокола; городъ = *town* makes города; докторъ = *doctor*, докторя; профессоръ = *professor*, профессоря; учитель = *teacher*, учителя; вѣкъ = *age, century*, годъ = *year*, and край = *country* have both вѣки and вѣка, годы and родя, краи and край. A few have two forms of the

nom. pl. with different meanings: *волосъ* = *hair*, has *волоса* = *hairs*, and *волосы* = *hair* (coll.), *a head of hair*; *образъ* = *form, species, manner*, has *образá* = *holy images*, and *образы* = *forms*; *хлѣбъ* = *bread*, has *хлѣба* = *the crops*, and *хлѣбы* = *loaves*; *цвѣтъ* = *colour*, has *цвѣта* = *colours* and *цвѣты* = *flowers* (for the sing. the diminutive form *цвѣточъ* is used, in the sense of a *single flower or blossom*); *мѣхъ* = (1) *bellows*, has nom. pl. *мѣхи*, = (2) *fur*, has *мѣха* = *furs*. Several masculine nouns have a nom. pl. in *-ья*, which is really a feminine collective sing. in form, though used as a masculine nom. pl. Thus *братъ* = *brother* makes nom. pl. *брáтья*; *стулъ* = *chair*, nom. pl. *стулья*; *листъ* = *leaf or sheet of paper* makes *листы* = *leaves, leafage* (but regularly *листы* = *sheets of paper*); *другъ* = *friend*, nom. pl. *друзья*; *мужъ* = *husband*, *мужья*; *зять* = *brother-in-law or son-in-law*, *зятьи*; *князь* = *prince*, *князья*. The last four make their gen. pl. in *-ей*, like *царь*, e. g. *друзей*, while *брáтья* makes gen. pl. *брáтьевъ*, *стулъ*—*студьевъ*, as do some other less common nom. plurals in *-ы*; all, however, from the dat. pl. onwards go alike, e. g. *друзьямъ*, inst. pl. *друзьями*, loc. pl. *друзьяхъ*.

*Сынъ* = *son* has nom. pl. *сыновья*, gen. pl. *сыновей*, dat. pl. *сыновьямъ*, &c. *Сосѣдъ* = *neighbour* and *чортъ* = *deril* make their plural like *царь* throughout, nom. pl. *сосѣди*, gen. pl. *сосѣдей*, &c.

A number of masculine nouns in *-инъ*, denoting individuals, make nom. pl. in *-е* and in the gen. pl. have no ending: *гражданинъ* = *citizen* makes nom. pl. *граждáне*, gen. pl. *граждáнъ*, from the dat. pl. onwards being regular, viz. *граждáнамъ*, &c.; *англичанинъ* = *Englishman*, nom. pl. *англичáне*, gen. pl. *англичáнъ*. Thus also *татаринъ* = *Tartar*, nom. pl. *татáре*; *болгаринъ* = *Bulgarian*, *болгáре*; *датчанинъ* = *Dane*, *датчáне* (also accented *дáтчанинъ*, *дáтчане*); *москвитянинъ* = *citizen of Moscow*, *москвитяне*; *римлянинъ* = *Roman*, *римляне*; *славянинъ* = *Slav*, *славяне*; *дворянинъ* = *nobleman*, *дворяне*; *крестьянинъ* = *peasant*, *крестьяне*, and (not to be confused with the last, though of identical derivation) *христианинъ* = *Christian*, nom. pl. *христiaне*.

*Господинъ* = *Mr.*, makes nom. pl. *господи* = *Messieurs*, '*Gentlemen!*' (also '*Ladies and Gentlemen!*'), gen. pl. *господъ*, dat. pl. *господамъ*, &c. *Хозяинъ* = *host, householder*, makes nom. pl. *хозяева* = (1) *hosts* and (2) *host and hostess*, gen. pl. *хозяевъ*, dat. pl. *хозяевамъ*, &c. Several regular masculine nom. plurals make

their gen. pl. without any ending, as the above ; this is really the old gen. pl. of this declension, while the form termed 'regular' in -овъ, -евъ was borrowed from another declension. Thus волосы = *hair* (collective) makes gen. pl. волосъ; разъ = *time, stroke, once*, gen. pl. разъ; солдатъ = *soldier*, gen. pl. солдатъ; глазъ = *eye*, gen. pl. глазъ; футъ = *foot* (measure), gen. pl. футъ; фунтъ = *pound* (measure), gen. pl. фунтъ; аршинъ = *yard* (measure), gen. pl. аршинъ, and most names of kinds of soldiers, e. g. ген. pl. гренадёръ, драгунъ, &c.

The gen. pl. of человѣкъ = *human being*, the only case of the plural of this word which is used, is человѣкъ, and it is only used after numerals, e. g. сто человѣкъ = *a hundred people*.

9. Богъ = *God* has a voc. sing. Бóже, otherwise it is declined regularly, like столъ, viz. Бóга, &c. Господъ = *Lord*, has a voc. sing. Господи, and though soft in the nom., is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Господа, &c. Христосъ = *Christ*, is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Христа, &c. The old voc. of отецъ = *father* occurs in the phrase Отче нашъ = *Pater noster*.

#### § 40. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -а, -я.

Almost all nouns ending in -а, -я are feminine. All those which end in -а are called *hard*, those ending in -я *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

As regards the accusative case, the acc. sing. of all nouns in -а, -я is quite different from the nom. sing., whether the thing be animate or inanimate. The acc. pl. of feminine nouns in -а, -я is the same as the nom. pl. in the case of inanimate, the same as the gen. pl. in the case of animate things. This is no doubt due to the influence of the masculine declension.

Examples : (hard) женщина = *woman*, сестра = *sister*.

(soft) земля = *land*, армія = *army*.

#### Singular.

N.	женщина	сестра	земля	армія
G.	женщины	сестры	земли	арміи
D.	женщинѣ	сестрѣ	землѣ	арміи
A.	женщину	сестру	землю	армію
I.	женщиной	сестрой	землей	арміей
L.	женщинѣ	сестрѣ	землѣ	арміи

*Plural.*

N.	жѣнщины	сѣстры	зѣмли	ѣрміи
G.	жѣнщинѣ	сестѣрь	земѣль	ѣрміѣ
D.	жѣнщинамѣ	сестра́мѣ	земля́мѣ	ѣрміямѣ
A.	жѣнщинѣ	сестѣрь	зѣмли	ѣрміи
I.	жѣнщинами	сестра́ми	земля́ми	ѣрміями
L.	жѣнщинахѣ	сестра́хѣ	земля́хѣ	ѣрміяхѣ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The inst. sing. of fem. nouns in -а, -я has two forms, the short -ой, -ей and the long -ою, -ею. The latter is the older and is still often used in poetry when an additional syllable is required, but in the colloquial language the shorter form is almost always used.

2. The gen. pl. of all fem. nouns ending in a vowel + я, which case would end in ѣ if the last letter of the stem were a consonant, is always written with an ѣ and is a diphthong, e. g. шея = *neck* makes gen. pl. шей, ѣрмія = *army* makes ѣрміѣ.

The gen. pl. of fem. nouns ending in -ы ends in -ей; e. g. статья = *newspaper article*, gen. pl. статей. Дѣдя = *uncle* also has gen. pl. дѣдей, and судья = *judge*, gen. pl. судей (судья is otherwise declined just like земля, viz. gen. sing. судья, nom. pl. судьи, &c.).

3. The dat. and loc. sing. of fem. nouns ending in -ія ends in -и, e. g. ѣрмія = *army*, dat. and loc. sing. ѣрміи; религія = *religion*, религіи; Россія = *Russia*, Россіи; Англія = *England*, Англіи.

Many fem. Christian names are spelt in two ways in the nom. sing., either -ія or -ья; if spelt in the former way, the dat. and loc. sing. ends in -и; if in the latter, then in -ѣ: e. g. Софія = *Sophia*, dat. and loc. sing. Софіи, but Софья, dat. and loc. sing. Софѣ; the former spelling is preferable.

4. The gen. sing. and nom. acc. pl. of all fem. nouns in -ка, -га, -ха, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша end in -ки, -ги, -хи, -чи, -щи, -жи, -ши because ы cannot stand after a guttural or after ч, щ, ж, or ш.

5. The inst. sing. of all fem. nouns ending in -ца, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша ends in -ей (sometimes written -ѣй) if the accent falls on the ending, and in -ѣй if the accent falls on the root, e. g. Царѣца = *Teartitza* has inst. sing. царѣцей, but душа = *soul* has inst. sing. душой.

6. A number of words whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation; e.g. сестра = *sister* has gen. pl. сестёръ; кошка = *cat*—кошекъ; земля = *land*—земель; деревня = *village*—деревень; барышня = *young lady*—барышень. A few such soft nouns become hard in the gen. pl., e.g. пѣсня = *song*, gen. pl. пѣсеньгъ; басня = *fable*—басеньгъ; башня = *tower*—башеньгъ. Nouns with ъ in the stem lengthen this to е in the gen. pl., e.g. судьба = *fate*, gen. pl. судьбъ; those with й in the stem likewise, e.g. копейка = *kopek* (the coin), gen. pl. копѣекъ (also spelt копѣйка, копѣекъ).

7. It is to be noted that there are a few masculine nouns and a number of names (mostly diminutives) ending in -а and -я and declined like feminine nouns: слуга = *male servant*,<sup>1</sup> юноша = *youth*, дядя = *uncle*, судья = *judge*, убійца = *murderer*, пьяница = *drunkard*.

Алёша = diminutive of Алексѣй = *Alexis*; Ваня = dim. of Иванъ = *John*; Володя = dim. of Владиміръ = *Vladimir*; Колья = dim. of Николай = *Nicholas*; Мisha = dim. of Михайлъ = *Michael*; Пётя = dim. of Пётръ = *Peter*; Саша = dim. of Александръ = *Alexander*; Серёжа = dim. of Сергѣй = *Sergius*, and many others; notice also the name Илья = *Elias*.

#### § 41. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -о, -е.

Almost all neuter nouns end in -о or -е. All nouns which end in -о or -е are neuter.

All nouns which end in -о are called *hard*, those ending in -е *soft*.

Examples: (hard) село = *village*.

(soft) { море = *sea*.  
имѣніе = *property* (sc. *land*).

#### Singular.

N. село	море	имѣніе
G. селѧ	морѧ	имѣній
D. селу	морю	имѣнію
A. село	море	имѣніе
I. селомъ	моремъ	имѣніемъ
L. селѣ	морѣ	имѣніи

<sup>1</sup> N.B. прислуга = a male or female servant is feminine.

*Plural.*

N.	сѣла	моря	имѣнія
G.	сѣлъ	морей	имѣній
D.	сѣламъ	морямъ	имѣніямъ
A.	сѣла	моря	имѣнія
I.	сѣлами	морями	имѣніями
L.	сѣлахъ	моряхъ	имѣніяхъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The neuter nouns in -е have borrowed the ending of the gen. pl. -ей (e. g. морей) from another declension.

Nouns in -ье as a rule make their gen. pl. in -ей, e. g. ружьё = *gun*, gen. pl. ружей, but платье = *dress or suit*, makes платьевъ, and кушанье = *dish* (sc. *the food*)—кушаньевъ.

Abstract nouns in -іе can also be spelt -ье, e. g. желаніе or желанье = *wish*; in the former case they are declined like имѣніе and in the latter like море.

2. Neuter nouns in -че, -ще, -же, -ше, -це follow the hard declension, but make their inst. sing. in -емъ, e. g. училище = *school*, inst. sing. училищемъ, but gen. sing. училища, gen. pl. училищъ.

3. A number of hard neuter nouns whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation, e. g. окно = *window*, gen. pl. оконъ; письмо = *letter*—писемъ.

Яйцо = *egg* makes gen. pl. яицъ, = two syllables, while the nom. pl. is яйца.

4. A number of neuter nouns have unexpected forms in the pl., thus яблоко = *apple*, nom. pl. яблоки, gen. pl. яблокъ; плечо = *shoulder*, nom. pl. плечи, gen. pl. плечъ; колѣно = *knee*, nom. pl. колѣни, gen. pl. колѣней; ухо = *ear* makes уши, ушей, око = *eye* (poetic)—очи, очей; in the dat., inst., and loc. pl. these all follow селю, e. g. inst. pl. яблоками, ушами, плечами (the endings in -и are relics of the old neuter dual, the eyes, ears, and shoulders being naturally mentioned in the dual oftener than in the plural). Небо = *heaven* makes nom. pl. небеса, gen. pl. небесъ; чудо = *miracle*—чудеса, чудесъ, dat. pl. небесамъ, чудесамъ, &c.

Дерево = *tree* makes nom. pl. деревья, gen. pl. деревьевъ, dat. pl. деревьямъ, &c.; перо = *feather, pen*—перья,—перьевъ, &c.; крыло

= *wing*—крылья, &c. There is a whole category of words which are neuter in the pl. and masculine in the sing.; these are all names of young living things, e.g. ребята = *children*, (gen. pl. ребятъ), ребёнокъ = *child*; щенята = *puppies*, sing. щенокъ; цыплята = *young fowls*, sing. цыплёнокъ; жеребята = *foals*, sing. жеребёнокъ; телёта = *calves*, sing. телёнокъ; поросята = *sucking-pigs*, sing. поросянокъ; котята = *kittens*, sing. котёнокъ; all these words in the sing. come under obs. 5, § 39, i.e. gen. acc. sing. ребёнка, &c.<sup>1</sup>

#### § 42. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -ь.

A number of fem. nouns, especially abstract nouns derived from adjectives, such as радость = *joy*, from радъ = *glad*, end in -ь in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *i*-declension.

Example: лошадь = *horse*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	лошадь	лошади
G.	лошади	лошадей
D.	лошади	лошадямъ
A.	лошадь	лошадей
I.	лошадью	лошадьми
L.	лошади	лошадихъ

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. The acc. pl. of names of animate things is the same as the gen. pl.; e.g. nom. pl. лошади = *horses*, gen. and acc. pl. лошадей; nom. pl. люди = *people, men and women* (which is used as the plural of человекъ, cf. p. 49; the singular of люди is людъ, a hard masculine noun, and means a *people*), gen. and acc. pl. людѣй, but кость = *bone*, gen. pl. костей, acc. pl. кости. The gen. pl. -ей of this declension is that borrowed by soft masc. and neuter nouns, cf. pp. 46, 52.

2. The regular inst. pl. of this declension, -ьми, has become replaced by that in -ями, borrowed from the soft fem. declension, in all words except the following: лошадь = *horse*, inst. pl. лошадыми, люди = *people*—людьми; кость = *bone*—костьми; дверь = *door*—дверьми; дѣти = *children*—дѣтьми; but радость = *joy*—радостью; скорость = *speed*—скоростями; страсть = *passion*—страстями; сани (pl. only) = *sledge*—санями; часть = *part*—частями.

<sup>1</sup> Облако = *cloud* has gen. pl. облаковъ.

3. Those nouns which end in -чь, -щъ, -жь, and -шь, and цѣрковь = *church* (cf. the following paragraph) have the dat. pl. in -амъ, the inst. pl. in -ами, and the loc. pl. in -ахъ; e. g. ночь = *night*—ночамъ, ночами, ночахъ; вещь = *thing*—вещамъ, вещами, вещахъ; цѣрковь—церквямъ, церквами, церквахъ.

4. The five nouns цѣрковь = *church*, любѡвь = *love*, рожь = *rye*, ложь = *lie*, and вошь = *louse* lose the o in all the oblique cases except in the inst. sing. Thus, gen. sing. цѣркви, любви, ржи, &c., but inst. sing. цѣрковью, любѡвью. When, however, Любѡвь is used as a Christian name, = *Love*, then it retains the o; gen. sing. Любѡви, &c.

5. There is only one masc. noun in this declension: путь = *way*, (= *road* and *means*); it is declined exactly like лошадь except that the inst. sing. is путёмъ and the inst. pl. путями.

6. The noun сажень = *seven feet* (measure) has gen. dat. sing. сажени and gen. pl. сажень.

7. The two nouns мать = *mother*, and дочь = *daughter* are declined as follows:

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	мать	матери
G.	матери	матерей
D.	матери	матерямъ
A.	мать	матерей
I.	матерью	матерями
L.	матери	матеряхъ

The inst. pl. матерями, дочерями are also used. In the colloquial language the use of мать and дочь is often replaced by that of the diminutives магушка (or мамаша) and дочка, which follow the ordinary fem. declension.

8. It is important to remember that the very common plurals люди = *people* and дѣти = *children*, are declined like the plural of лошадь.

#### § 43. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -я.

A few neuter nouns end in -я in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *n*-declension.

Example: время = *time*.



	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	время	времена́
G.	времени	време́нь
D.	времени	времена́мъ
A.	время	времена́
I.	временемъ	времена́ми
L.	времени	времена́хъ

Other common words in this declension are: *ѣмя* = (*Christian*) *name*, *плѣмя* = *tribe*, *пламя* = *flame*, *бремя* = *burden*, and *сѣмя* = *seed* (which has an irregular gen. pl. *сѣмянъ*), *знамя* = *standard*, *стрѣмя* = *stirrup* (gen. pl. *стрѣмянъ*).

The word *дитя́* = *child*, which is neuter, is declined in the singular as follows:

N.	дитя́
G.	дитя́ти
D.	дитя́ти
A.	дитя́
I.	дитя́тей
L.	дитя́ти

The plural *дѣти* goes like *лошади* q. v.; in the colloquial language the alternative word for *child*, *ребѣнокъ*, (cf. p. 53), is more commonly used for the singular, *child*, and *дѣти* more commonly for the plural, *children*.

The oblique cases of *дитя́* are very seldom used except in literature, and the plural of *ребѣнокъ*, *ребѣта*, is specially used in the meaning *comrades*, *boys*, e. g. among soldiers, though also commonly used for *children* by the peasants.

#### § 44. Note on the Terminations of Substantives.

All nouns ending in *-ъ*, *-ѣ* are masculine.

„ „ „ *-о*, *-е* are neuter.

Nouns „ „ „ *-ь* are either masculine or feminine, e. g. *царь* = *tsar*, masc., but *осень* = *autumn*, fem.

Most nouns ending in *-а*, *-я* are feminine, but a few are masculine and neuter, e. g. *служá* = (*man*-) *servant*, *судья́* = *judge*, masc., *ѣмя* = (*Christian*) *name*, neut.

Common terminations denoting male and female agents are: masc. *-икъ*, *-ель*, *-ецъ*, *-ишъ*, *-ушъ*; fem. *-ница*, *-ица*, *-ка*, *-унья*, and others, e. g.:

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
прикащикъ <i>salesman</i>	прикащица
ученикъ <i>pupil</i>	ученица
учитель <i>teacher</i>	учительница
пѣвецъ <i>singer</i>	пѣвица
самецъ <i>male</i> (sc. <i>beast</i> )	самка <i>female</i> (sc. <i>beast</i> )
купецъ <i>merchant</i>	купчиха ( <i>his wife</i> )
генералъ <i>general</i>	генеральша ( <i>his wife</i> )
господинъ <i>Mr., gentleman</i>	госпожа <i>Mrs., lady</i>
гражданинъ <i>citizen</i>	гражданка ( <i>fem.</i> )
врунь <i>liar</i>	врунья
государь <i>sir, sovereign</i>	государыня <i>lady, sovereign</i>
баринъ <i>sir, master</i>	бариня <i>lady, mistress</i>

Notice that молодецъ = *clever chap, brave fellow* (a very common word of praise), умница = *clever-boots*, другъ = *friend*, and человекъ = *person*, can be used of either males or females. The feminine of врачъ = *doctor* is женщина врачъ = *woman doctor*.

Cf. also англичанка = *Englishwoman* (for masc. v. p. 48), нѣмецъ, нѣмка = *German* (pl. нѣмцы, fem. нѣмки). Similarly американецъ = *American*, венгерецъ = *Hungarian*, голландецъ = *Dutchman*, испанецъ = *Spaniard*, итальянецъ = *Italian*, норвежецъ = *Norwegian*, швейцарецъ = *Swiss*, ирландецъ = *Irishman*, and шотландецъ = *Scot*, all turn -ецъ into -ка for the fem. and -цы, -ки for the pl., gen. pl. = -цевъ, -окъ; португалецъ makes португалька, -лицы = *Portuguese*; австриецъ, австрийка, -ийцы = *Austrian*; бельгиецъ, -ийка, -ийцы = *Belgian*; шведъ, шведка, шведы = *Swede*; грекъ, гречанка, греки = *Greek*; сербъ, сербійнка, сербы = *Servian*; тюркъ, турчанка, турки = *Turk*; полякъ, полька, поляки = *Pole*; чехъ, чешка, чѣхи = *Bohemian*, and французъ, французенка, французы = *French*.

#### § 45.

#### Diminutive Endings.

The extensive use of diminutives is one of the first things that strikes the beginner. Some words are only used in their diminutive forms, e. g. мальчикъ = *boy*, from which a further diminutive has had to be formed, viz. мальчишка = *little boy*. In many cases the diminutives are really meant to imply smallness, but very frequently they are used merely as a means of expressing affection, politeness, or good humour, and in such they are difficult, if not

impossible to translate in English. E.g. the conductor in a train always asks to see your билѣтики = *little tickets*; this does not imply that the tickets are small, but merely that the conductor would not refuse a drink.

The commonest diminutive endings are :

*Masculine.*

-икъ,	e. g.	мáльчикъ	= <i>boy</i>
-ишка,	„	мáльчишка	= <i>little boy</i>
-екъ,	„	внучекъ	= <i>grandson</i>
-ёкъ,	„	звѣрёкъ	= <i>animal</i>
-окъ,	„	дружокъ	= <i>friend</i>
-ецъ	„	братецъ	= <i>brother</i>
-ёнокъ,	„	котёнокъ	= <i>kitten</i> (cf. § 41, obs. 4)
-ичъ,	„	Петровичъ	= <i>son of Peter</i> <sup>1</sup>

*Feminine.*

-ка,	„	дѣвочка	= <i>girl</i> (till puberty)
-на,	„	Петровна	= <i>daughter of Peter</i> <sup>1</sup>
-ца,	„	частица	= <i>part</i>

*Neuter.*

-ко,	„	облачко	= <i>cloud</i>
-цо,	„	письмецо	= <i>letter</i>
-це,	„	окныце	= <i>window</i>

As an example of the varieties of diminutives that can be formed from one word, take the word дѣва = *virgin* (only used in such expressions as the 'Maid of Orleans', or старая дѣва = *an old maid*):

дѣвица = *spinster*.

дѣвка = *girl* (sc. *common girl, wench*, a very derogatory term).

дѣвочка = *girl* (up to 12).

дѣвушка = *girl* (from 12 till marriage, or till about 30).

дѣвчѡнка = *little girl*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Literally = *Peter's little one*; Петровъ (masc.) and Петрова (fem.) are possessive adjectives formed from the word Пётръ = *Peter*; and to the stem Петров- are added -ичъ for the son and -на for the daughter. All other patronymics are formed analogously. Patronymics are often contracted in rapid conversation, e.g. Иа́нычъ for Ива́новичъ, &c.; Ма́рія Ива́новна sounds like Ма́рийнна.

The following terminations imply good humour or affection specifically:

-ушка, -юшка, -ышко, -енька, -онка.

The following terminations are considered to imply depreciation:

-ишка, -ишко, -ёнка, -онка and sometimes -ушка.

The following are called augmentatives, as they usually imply largeness:

-ина, -ище, -ища.

## THE DECLENSION OF THE PRONOUNS

§ 46. The inflexions of these are for the most part different from those of the substantives, though there are a few points of similarity, e.g. the dat. pl. always ends in -мъ and the inst. pl. always in -ми.

### Personal Pronouns.

Я = *I*, ты = *thou*, онъ = *he*, она́ = *she*, оно́ = *it*, мы = *we*, вы = *you*, онѣ, онѣ́ = *they*.

#### *Singular.*

N.	я	ты	онъ (neut. оно́)	она́
G.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́	ей
D.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ему́	ей
A.	меня́	тебѣ́	его́	еѣ́
I.	мною́	тобѣ́ю́	имъ́	ей
L.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	(н)ѣмъ́	(н)ей

#### *Plural.*

N.	мы	вы	онѣ́ (masc. and neut.), онѣ́́ (fem.)
G.	насъ́	васъ́	ихъ́
D.	намъ́	вамъ́	имъ́
A.	насъ́	васъ́	ихъ́
I.	нами́	вами́	ими́
L.	насъ́	васъ́	(н)ихъ́

### OBSERVATIONS.

1. There is a reflexive personal pronoun, себя́, which has no nominative, and is declined alike in the sing. and pl.:

- G. себя  
D. себя  
A. себя  
I. собой  
L. себя

i. e. just like тебя.

The peculiarity of its use is that it can be applied to any of the three persons; e. g. я люблю себя = *I love myself*, ты любишь себя = *thou lovest thyself*; онъ or она любить себя = *he or she loves him- or herself*. It also occurs in a few very common idioms; e. g. такъ себя = *fairly, averagely* (lit. = *thus to itself*); само собою разумеется = *that is understood* (lit. = *itself understands itself by itself*); она хорошая собой = *she is a good-looking woman* (lit. *she [is] nice with herself*); онъ живётъ себя тамъ . . . = *he goes on living there* (here the себя implies that he goes on living in his own way, paying little attention to others, but not necessarily that he is a recluse); онъ сломалъ себя голову = *he has cracked his head*, the Russian equivalent for *he has broken his neck*.

When joined to an ordinary transitive verb (making it reflexive) себя is contracted to -ся or -сь; e. g. разумеется = *of course* (lit. = *it understands itself*), что не дѣлается = *that is not done*; нахожусь = *I find myself*. But the addition of the reflexive pronoun by no means always makes the word passive; Russian has many reflexive verbs which are middle in meaning, e. g. бояться = *to fear*, боюсь = *I fear*; нравится = *it pleases*, мнѣ нравится = *it pleases me, I like*. Cf. §§ 100, 110.

2. The nominatives онъ, она, оно, они, онѣ did not belong originally to его, &c., and are not really personal pronouns at all, but demonstrative pronouns, corresponding somewhat to the German *jener, jene, jenes*, which in Russian, no longer used regularly as demonstrative pronouns, have been borrowed to supply the place of the lost nominatives of его, &c.

3. It is important to notice that the acc. sing. of онъ and of оно is always его, i. e. = the gen. sing., even though the thing to which it refers be inanimate. Similarly the acc. pl. of они and of онѣ is always ихъ.

4. The initial и- in имъ, ихъ, and имн is always pronounced yi-.

5. The gen. sing. of она is usually pronounced *yeyó*, i. e. like the acc. sing. ея, though it is always written ея.

6. The genitives of the personal pronoun *eró*, *ей*, and *ихъ* ordinarily mean *his*, *her*, and *their*, since Russian has no possessive pronoun of the third person, e. g. the only way of saying *his father* in Russian is *eró otéцъ* (or *отéцъ eró*).

7. The oblique cases of *онъ*, *она́*, and *онѹ́*, when directly governed by a preposition, are always prefixed by the letter *н*; this is ostensibly done for the sake of euphony, but the real reason is that certain prepositions originally ended in *н*, and this letter was borrowed by other prepositions which did not end in it. Subsequently when the prepositions lost their final *н*, it stuck to the pronoun where it has remained. As the loc. case in Russian is never used without a preposition of some sort, the loc. of this pronoun is always prefixed by *н*, placed in brackets in the paradigm for this reason. When a preposition precedes *его*, *ея*, or *ихъ* in their meaning of *his*, *her*, or *their*, and therefore does not directly govern the pronoun, the *н* is omitted.

Examples : *съ нимъ* = *with him*, *отъ нихъ* = *from them*, *о нёмъ* = *about him*, but *отъ eró otéцá* = *from his father*, *о eró bráтѣ* = *about his brother*, &c.

8. For the inst. sing. *мноѹ́*, *тобоѹ́*, *ей*, and *собоѹ́* the full forms *мною́*, *тобою́*, *ёю́*, and *собою́* are often used.

9. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun *вы* are always spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

10. The particle *же* (or *-жѣ*) is often affixed to the personal pronouns, and expresses identity or gives emphasis to the pronoun; e. g. *я твоѹ́, братѣ, я же и твоѹ́ другѣ* = *I am thy brother, I too am thy friend*; *кто вамѣ далѣ э́то? онѣ—а э́то? онѣ же* = *who gave you this? he [did]—and this? he [did] too*. In book catalogues when the name of the author has once been printed, *ерѹже* printed in front of the titles of his various works means *by the same author*.

*же* can also mean *but* where a slight emphasis is laid on the pronoun; e. g. *вы же сказа́ли э́то!* = *but it was you [who] said this!*

11. The particle *то* affixed to the personal pronouns also expresses identity or gives emphasis.

#### § 47. Possessive Pronouns.

The declension of these resembles that of *онѣ*, *моѹ́*, *моѹ́*, *моѹ́*; *моѹ́* = *my, mine*; *твоѹ́*, *твоѹ́*, *твоѹ́*; *твоѹ́* = *thy, thine*; *своѹ́*, *своѹ́*, *своѹ́*;

свой = *one's own*; нашъ, наша, наше; наши = *our, ours*; вашъ, ваша, ваше: ваши = *your, yours*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N. мой	моя	моё	мои
G. моего	моёй	моего	моихъ
D. моему	моей	моему	моимъ
A. мой от моего	мою	моё	мой от моихъ
I. моимъ	моёй	моимъ	моими
L. моёмъ	моей	моёмъ	моихъ
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
N. нашъ	наша	наше	наши
G. нашего	нашей	нашего	нашихъ
D. нашему	нашей	нашему	нашимъ
A. = N. or G.	нашу	наше	= N. or G.
I. нашимъ	нашей	нашимъ	нашими
L. нашемъ	нашей	нашемъ	нашихъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. Твой and свой are declined exactly like мой, and вашъ exactly like нашъ.

2. Свой can only be used when it refers to the subject of the sentence, but it can be used of any of the three persons; e.g. я люблю своего отца can only mean *I love my father* (though it is also possible to say я люблю моего отца), whereas я люблю его отца = *I love his father*. Again, онъ любитъ свою сестру = *he loves his (own) sister*, whereas онъ любитъ её сестру = *he loves his (i.e. some one else's) sister*.

3. The acc. sing. of the masc. and acc. pl. of all three genders of these pronouns follow the rule of the masculine substantives; i. e. when the object referred to is animate, the acc. = the gen., when inanimate it is the same as the nom.

4. For the inst. sing. моёй, твоёй, своёй, нашей, and вашей, the full forms мою, твою, свою, нашу, and вашу are also used.

5. It is important to notice that the nom. pl. мои (also твой and свой) is a disyllable, pronounced *ma-yt*; the nom. sing. masc. мой (as also твой and свой), on the other hand, is a diphthong, the -й being the original nom. sing. of the personal pronoun of the 3rd person, which in that declension has been replaced by онъ, &c.

6. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun *вашъ* are spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

7. The particle *же* (or *-жь*) affixed to the possessive pronouns expresses identity of ownership, e. g. *чей этотъ домъ ? мой*—*а чьё это поле ? моё же* = *whose is this house ? mine—and whose is this field ? mine also*.

8. The particle *то* emphasizes the pronouns; e. g.:

*мой-то ? = do you mean mine ?*

#### § 48.

#### Demonstrative Pronouns.

The declension of these is similar for the most part to that of the possessive pronouns, though differing from it in some important particulars.

*тотъ, та, то ; тѣ = that (yonder).*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem., Neut.</i>
N.	тотъ	та	то	тѣ
G.	того	той	того	тѣхъ
D.	тому	той	тому	тѣмъ
A.	= N. or G.	ту	то	= N. or G.
I.	тѣмъ	той	тѣмъ	тѣми
L.	томъ	той	томъ	тѣхъ

*этотъ, эта, это ; эти = this or that (here).*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem., Neut.</i>
N.	этотъ	эта	это	эти
G.	этого	этой	этого	этихъ
D.	этому	этой	этому	этимъ
A.	= N. or G.	эту	это	= N. or G.
I.	этимъ	этой	этимъ	этими
L.	этомъ	этой	этомъ	этихъ

*сей, сія, сіе (or сѣ) ; сии = this (here).*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem., Neut.</i>
N.	сей	сія	сіе	сіи
G.	сего	сей	сего	сихъ
D.	сему	сей	сему	симъ
A.	= N. or G.	сію	сіе	= N. or G.
I.	симъ	сей	симъ	сіими
L.	сѣмъ	сей	сѣмъ	сихъ



## OBSERVATIONS.

1. For the inst. sing. *тотъ, этотъ*, and *ceit* the full forms *тѣмъ, тѣмъ, и сѣмъ* are also used.

2. Of these three pronouns *этотъ* is the oftenest, *ceit* the most seldom used. *Этотъ* is frequently used where we should say *that* in English, e. g. in very common phrases such as :

Что это такое ? = *what's that* (lit. = *what this such*) ?

Кто это такой ? = *who's that* (lit. = *who this such*) ?

Это было давно = *that was long ago*.

Это очень хорошо = *that's very nice*.

Это нашъ домъ = *that is our house*.

*Это* can also mean *these* or *those* when it is the subject of a sentence and very frequently has this meaning, e. g. :

Это мои дѣти = *these or those [are] my children*.

The neuter pronoun *то* is often used as an enclitic affixed to a noun or another pronoun irrespective of gender or number to emphasize or to differentiate, and it sometimes seems to take the place of the definite article.

E. g. въ томъ-то и дѣло or то-то и есть (both =) *that's just the point*; домъ-то мой = *the house is mine*.

(The first of these is not to be confused with the similar idiom given below.)

In the colloquial language, especially that of the peasants, this pronoun can be affixed to any noun (but only in the nom.) and made to agree with it, and thus acquire the value of a definite article.

3. *Тотъ* is used specially frequently in argument, e. g. *то, что . . .* = *that which . . .*; it is also used as a definite article before a relative clause, e. g. *тотъ мальчикъ, которому я далъ деньги* = *the boy to whom I gave the money*. In conversation, however, even *that (yonder)* is frequently rendered by *этотъ* with the addition of *тамъ* = *there*, e. g. *этотъ домъ тамъ—нашъ* = *that house over there is ours*.

4. *Тотъ* is especially common compounded with prepositions, e. g. *потомъ* = *then* (lit. = *upon that*), *загнѣмъ* = *then* (lit. = *behind that*), *потому* = *therefore* (lit. = *according to that*), *кромѣ того* =

*besides* (lit. = *outside that*), за то = *on the other hand* (lit. = *for that*).

5. Тотъ followed by этотъ is often used for *the former and the latter*.

6. It is important to notice the very common idiom то и дѣло (lit. = *and that's the thing*), which means *incessantly*.

7. Сѣ is seldom used except in a few phrases in which it is extremely common, e. g. сѣчасъ = *immediately* (lit. = *this instant*, though the noun часъ has changed its meaning and in modern Russian = *hour*); сию мину́ту = *this minute, this instant*; сегодня = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*); до сихъ поръ = *till now* (lit. = *till these times*); и то и сѣ = *both the one and the other*; при сѣмъ = *'enclosed'* (lit. = *in the presence of this*).

8. The pronouns такой, таковой, and таковой = *such* are declined like adjectives, q. v.

9. The pronoun оный = *that (yonder)*, which supplied the forms of the personal pronoun онъ, &c., is now obsolete and only common in the phrase во время оно = *in days of yore* (lit. = *into that time*).

10. Тотъ followed by the enclitic же = *the same* and is very common, e. g. въ томъ же домѣ = *in the same house*, того же автора (gen.) = *by the same author*, съ тѣмъ же мальчикомъ = *with the same boy*; the words одинъ и = *one and* are often added, e. g. въ одномъ и томъ же городѣ = *in one and the same town*, въ одно и то же время = *at one and the same time*. The phrase тоже, always written as one word, = *also*, e. g. мы тоже = *we also*. Этотъ же = *this same* and такой же = *of the same kind*, are also very common.

#### § 49. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

кто = *who* (masc. and fem.); что = *what*.

N.	кто	что
G.	кого́	чего́
D.	кому́	чему́
A.	кого́	что
I.	кѣмъ	чѣмъ
L.	комъ	чѣмъ

чей, чья, чьё; чьи = *whose*.

Russian has a special pronoun for *whose* which is declined throughout.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	чей	чья	чьё
G.	чьего	чьей	чьихъ
D.	чьему	чьей	чьимъ
A.	= N. or G.	чью	= N. or G.
I.	чьимъ	чьей	чьими
L.	чьёмъ	чьей	чьихъ

какой = *which*, какой and каковъ = *of what sort*, are declined like adjectives, q. v.; который supplies the plural of кто, что.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pronoun *чей* is of course most frequently used in the nominative, e. g. *чей этотъ домъ?* = *whose house is this?* But the other cases are not uncommon, e. g. *чью жену онъ любитъ?* = *whose wife does he love?*

2. *Что* is used to introduce a subordinate clause in all those cases where in English we use the demonstrative pronoun *that*, i. e. after all verbs of asserting, denying, believing, thinking, perceiving, feeling, &c., e. g. *я говорю, что онъ дуракъ* = *I say that he [is] a fool*. It is also used in the expressions for *why* and *because*, e. g. *отчего?* = *why?* (= *from what*), *оттого что* = *because* (lit. = *from that what*), *почему?* = *why?* (lit. = *according to what*), *потому что* = *because* (lit. = *according to that what*). It is important to notice the difference in meaning of these two expressions: *отчего* = *from what cause*, e. g. *отчего сегодня такъ темно?* = *why is it so dark to-day?* *отчего вы такъ блѣдны?* = *why are you so pale?* but *почему* = *on what ground*, e. g. *почему вы говорите это?* = *why do you say this?* *почему онъ желаетъ видѣть меня?* = *why does he wish to see me?* Of course there are many questions in which either of the two words could be used indifferently, and the answer to both is usually introduced by *потому что*, which is far commoner than *оттого что*. There is yet another expression for *why*, viz. *зачѣмъ?* which means literally *behind what?* and thus comes to mean *trying to get what?* or *with what object?* e. g. *зачѣмъ вы пришли?* = *why*

(sc. *with what object*) *have you come?* The answer to such a question is introduced by *затѣмъ, чтобы* (or more often merely by *чтобы*) = *in order that* (lit. *behind that what*), which is followed by the past tense or the infinitive; the particle -бы affixed to *что* (and sometimes written *чтобъ*) is really part of the verb *быть* = *to be*, q. v. *Чтобы* means *in order that*, and is also used to introduce wishes, when it is always followed by the past tense, e. g. *чтобы это было такъ!* = *that it were so!* Both *что* as a conjunction and *чтобы* are enclitics and have no accent.

3. *Кто* is often used by itself to express *whoever*, e. g. *кто умѣетъ по-норвѣжски, тотъ и понимаетъ по-датски* = *whoever knows Norwegian can also understand (lit. that one also understands) Danish*, *кто говоритъ это, врѣтъ* = *whoever says this, lies*. Another very common way of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* is to add *бы ни* to *кто* and *что*, which are then always followed by the past tense; it is important to notice that the particle *ни* does not imply negation; e. g. *кто бы мнѣ ни говорилъ это, я ему не повѣрю* = *whoever should tell me this, I shall not believe him*; *что бы вы ни дѣлали, я не буду васъ слушать* = *whatever you do, I shall not listen to you*; and the following very common idioms may be mentioned: *кто бы то ни было* = *whoever it be*, *что бы то ни было* = *whatever it be*, and *во что бы то ни стало* = *cost what it may* (lit. = *into whatever it should become*). This use of *бы* must be carefully distinguished from that mentioned in the preceding paragraph. *Whoever not* can only be translated by *кто не* . . . , e. g. *кто не видѣлъ Москвы, не знаетъ Россію* = *whoever has not seen Moscow, does not know Russia*. Other common ways of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* are phrases such as *every one who*, *all that*, &c.

4. *Кто . . . , кто . . .* is very commonly used to express *some . . . others . . .*, e. g. *всѣ уѣхали, кто на лошадихъ, кто по желѣзной дорогѣ* = *they have all left, some by carriage (lit. = on horses), some by railway*.

5. The particle *же* or *-жъ* is very frequently affixed to *кто*, *что*, *чей*, and *какой*, and gives these pronouns the meaning *who then?* &c.; e. g. *кого же вы видѣли?* = *whom then was it you saw, whom then did you see?* *что же случилось?* = *what then has happened?* *Чтожъ* by itself, as an exclamation, is very commonly used in answer to a question or request, and means approximately *certainly*, or *why not?* Another very common idiom is *ну, такъ что-жъ?* =

*well, what about it?* Yet another что-жъ дѣлать? = *what's to be done, que voulez vous?*

Отчего же? and почему же? are also very common in argument, meaning both *why then?* Отчего же! is also used as an exclamation, meaning both *far from it, not at all, and certainly, by all means.*

6. Что and что-жъ is also very frequently used to introduce a question, and is in fact almost the most usual way of introducing an interrogative sentence; in this use it never has any emphasis on it; e. g. что вы поѣдете въ этомъ году за границу? = *shall you go abroad this year?*

## § 50.

## Definitive Pronouns.

самъ, самá, самó; самн = *self.*

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	самъ	самá	самó	самн
G.	самого	самой	самого	самѣхъ
D.	самоу	самой	самоу	самимъ
A.	= N. or G.	самоу	самó	= N. or G.
I.	самимъ	самой	самимъ	самими
L.	самомъ	самой	самомъ	самѣхъ

всѣ, вся, всё; всё = *all, the whole.*

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	всѣ	вся	всё	всѣ
G.	всего	всѣй	всего	всѣхъ
D.	всему	всѣй	всему	всѣмъ
A.	= N. or G.	всю	всё	= N. or G.
I.	всѣмъ	всѣй	всѣмъ	всѣми
L.	всѣмъ	всѣй	всѣмъ	всѣхъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. Всѣмъ и каждыи = *every, each*, нѣмъ = *some*, and другой = *other*, are declined like adjectives, q. v. For одинъ = *only, alone* (lit. = *one*) cf. Numerals, § 60.

2. One *another* is expressed in Russian by the phrase другъ друга, which is the nom. and acc. sing. of the word другъ, which originally meant *second* or *other*, but in modern Russian has acquired the meaning of *friend*; e. g. они очень любятъ другъ друга = *they love*

*one another very much*, мы пошлѣ другъ съ друтомъ = *we went one with the other*.

3. Самъ can be used either before or after the noun it qualifies, e. g. я самъ = *I myself* (masc.), я самá = *I myself* (fem.), самъ царь = *the tsar himself*, я видѣть самогó царя = *I saw the tsar himself*, онъ мнѣ самому сказать это = *he told this to me myself* (sc. *not through anybody else*), мы сами = *we ourselves*, онъ самъ от самъ онъ = *he himself*, самó собою = *by or of itself*, я самъ себя купилъ это = *I bought this for myself myself*, она самá себя купила это = *she bought this for herself herself*.

4. It is not difficult to distinguish the use of самъ from that of the reflexive pronoun себя, but самъ is very easily confused with the longer form of the same word сáмый = *the very*, which is declined like an adjective, e. g. тотъ же сáмый человекъ = *the very same man*, but самъ человекъ = *the man himself*; въ сáмомъ центрѣ города = *in the very centre of the town*, but въ самомъ городѣ = *in the town itself*. Сáмый is also used in the formation of the superlative degree in the comparison of adjectives, q. v.

5. The use of весь does not present any difficulties, e. g. весь городъ = *the whole town*, весь день (acc.) = *all day long*, всю ночь (acc.) = *all night long*, она вся въ чёрномъ = *she [is] all in black*. It is very important to notice a few very common idioms in which the word occurs: совсѣмъ = *quite* (lit. = *with all*), всё равно = *it's all the same* (lit. = *all even*), всего хорошаго, всего лучшаго! = (*I wish you*) *everything good, everything of the best!* (gen. after verb of wishing), всего = *altogether, in all*, e. g. всего пять мѣстъ багажа = *five pieces of luggage in all* (lit. = *of all*), всё = *continually* (this is really an adverbial use of the neuter), e. g. она всё плакала = *she kept on crying all the time*, онъ всё кричитъ = *he keeps on shouting, he is always shouting*, я всё пишу = *I am always writing*, онъ всё ходить въ театръ = *he is always going to the theatre*. It is very important to be sure of pronouncing весь with a soft c and closed e, as there is another word вѣсь having the open e-sound and hard ending, meaning *weight*.

### § 51.

#### Indefinite Pronouns.

никто = *no one*, ничто = *nothing*.

These are declined exactly like кто and что, but it is to be observed that the nom. and acc. ничто is very rarely used, the gen.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

being almost always substituted for them, e. g. что съ вами? ничеро! = *what is the matter with you? nothing!* Это ничеро! = *no matter!* (lit. = *this [is] nothing*). When a verb follows either of these pronouns, it must always be negative, since in Russian two negatives do not make an affirmative, but are on the other hand necessary to complete the negation, e. g. никто не пришёл = *no one has come*, я никому не сказа́лъ = *I have told no one*, онъ мнѣ ничеро не далъ = *he has given me nothing*.

The following very common idioms may be noticed: никого не видать = *there is no one to be seen*, ничеро не видать = *there is nothing to be seen*, никого or ничеро не слы́хатъ = *there is no one or nothing to be heard*.

There is a very idiomatic adverbial use of the word ничеро in which it means *tolerably, fairly well*, e. g. какъ вы себя чу́вствуете? ничеро! = *how do you feel [yourself]? fairly well!* This can also be used with a verb, e. g. онъ игра́етъ ничеро = *he plays fairly well*, but of course with the double negative the meaning would be negative, e. g. онъ ничеро не игра́етъ = *he is not playing anything*.

When никто́ and ничто́ are used with a preposition, the latter is inserted between the *ни-* and the pronoun, e. g. ни съ кѣмъ = *with no one*, ни о чёмъ = *about nothing*, ни за что́ = *not for anything*, ни съ чѣмъ = *without accomplishing one's object* (lit. = *with nothing*); ни въ чёмъ не быва́ло is an idiom meaning *not in the least*, and какъ бу́дто ни въ чёмъ не быва́ло = *quite unruffled, as if nothing had happened*.

никако́й = *of no kind*

is declined like an adjective, q. v.

не́кого = *there is no one to . . .*

не́чего = *there is nothing to . . .*

Не- can be prefixed to any case of кто and что except the nom., and the words thus formed are written as one word, except when used with a preposition, which, just as in the case of никто́, is inserted between the *не-* and the pronoun. It is always followed by the inf. It is important to remember that the accent is always on the не-, while in никто́ it is always on the last syllable; e. g. не́чего дѣла́тъ or дѣла́тъ не́чего! = *there is nothing to be done!* (lit. = *to do*; a very common idiom), говори́тъ не́чего! = *there is nothing more to be said, there's no denying it*, не́кому сказа́тъ = *there is no one*

*to tell*, нѣ съ кѣмъ говорить = *there is no one to talk to* (lit. = *with*), нѣ о чѣмъ писать = *there is nothing to write about*, and the common idioms: нѣ за что = *il n'y pas de quoi* (our *don't mention it*), нѣ за чѣмъ = *there is no object, there is no point*.

нѣкто = *some one*, нѣчто = *something*.

It is important not to confuse these two words with нѣкого and нѣчего. The beginner is all the more likely to confuse them because *ѣ* is pronounced exactly like *е* and in both the accent is on the same syllable. But as a matter of fact the two words are of very rare occurrence except in the nom., much the commoner expressions for *some one* and *something* being those mentioned lower; e. g. я слышать нѣчто о нёмъ = *I have heard something about him*, онъ мнѣ нѣчто сказать = *he told me something*.

нѣкоторый = *a certain, some*, is declined like an adjective, q. v.

кто-то = *some one*, что-то = *something*, кто-нибудь = *some one or other, any one*, что-нибудь = *something or other, anything* (lit. = *who not be, who be it not*), кто-либо = *any one*, что-либо = *anything*.

These are all declined exactly like *кто* and *что*. The difference in meaning between *кто-то* and *кто-нибудь* is slight but very important. *Кто-то* is the more definite of the two and can never mean *any one*; *кто-нибудь* is less definite and means *some one* or *any one*. The difference is best illustrated by examples: *кто-то* идётъ = *some one is coming*, *кто-то* пришёлъ = *some one has come*, *кто-то* сказалъ мнѣ = *some one told me*, *кто-то* тамъ = [*there is*] *some one there*, *кто-то* позвонилъ = *some one has rung*, я далъ кому-то книгу, но не помню кому = *I gave the book to some one, but I don't remember to whom*, она сказала мнѣ что-то о нёмъ = *she told me something about him* (sc. *but I don't want to tell you what*), я вижу что-то тамъ = *I see something there*, онъ написалъ что-то на бумажкѣ = *he wrote something on the piece of paper*, рубль съ чѣмъ-то = *a rouble with something* (i. e. *over a rouble, I forget how much*), говядина съ чѣмъ-то = *beef with something* (i. e. *something with it, I forget what*), but дома-ли кто-нибудь? or кто-нибудь дома? = *is any one at home?* спросите кого-нибудь! = *ask some one!* я спрошу у кого-нибудь совѣта = *I shall ask advice from some one*, я куплю вамъ что-нибудь = *I shall buy you something or other* (sc. *I don't know myself exactly what*), я куплю вамъ что-то = *I shall buy you something* (sc. *I know what, but I am not going to*



*tell you*), надо сдѣлать что-нибудь = *something must be done* (sc. *I don't know what*), надѣньте что-нибудь теплѣе = *put something warm on* (sc. *it doesn't matter what*), скушайте что-нибудь ещё = *eat something more*, скажите мнѣ что-нибудь о себѣ = *tell me something about yourself*, сыграйте намъ что-нибудь! = *do play us something!*

Кто-либо and что-либо are still more indefinite, e. g. спросите кого-либо, а онъ скажетъ намъ . . . = *ask any one you like, and he will tell you . . .*, дайте кому-либо = *give [it] to any one you like*.

Кѣмъ-кто = *a few*, кое-что = *a little*. These are also declined exactly like кто and что; they imply indefiniteness of number or quantity, e. g. я спрашиваю кѣмъ-кого = *I have been asking one or two people*, онъ сказалъ мнѣ кое-что о себѣ = *he told me a few things about himself*, я узнаю кое-что о . . . = *I have found out a thing or two about . . .*, я кѣмъ-съ кѣмъ говорю объ этомъ = *I have been talking to one or two people about this*.

Кѣмъ-какой = *a few* and любой = *any you like* are declined like adjectives, q. v.

## DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVES

§ 52. The adjective in Russian has two forms, the shorter and the longer; the shorter is called the predicative, the longer the attributive.

The predicative form of the adjective is used almost solely when the adjective is the predicate of a sentence; in form it is exactly like a noun, and except in popular poetry it occurs only in the nominative, e. g. домъ хорошъ = *the house [is] nice* (cf. German: *das Haus ist schön*), моя сестра больна = *my sister [is] ill*, море глубокó = *the sea [is] deep*, они живы = *they [are] alive*, я очень радъ = *I [am] very glad*, онъ счастливъ = *he [is] happy*, она здорова = *she [is] well*, я виноватъ = *I [am] to blame*, я виновата = *I [am] to blame* (if a woman is speaking). But whenever an adjective qualifies a noun, the longer or attributive form must be used; this is an amalgamation of the shorter form with the pronominal endings. There is a hard and a soft declension, corresponding to the hard and soft nouns.

## § 53.

**Hard Declension.**

Example : бѣлый, бѣлая, бѣлое = *white*.

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣлый	бѣлая	бѣлое
G.	бѣлаго	бѣлой	бѣлаго
D.	бѣлому	бѣлой	бѣлому
A. = N. or G.		бѣлую	бѣлое
I.	бѣлымъ	бѣлой	бѣлымъ
L.	бѣломъ	бѣлой	бѣломъ

*Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣлые	бѣлыя	
G.		бѣлыхъ	
D.		бѣлымъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		бѣлыми	
L.		бѣлыхъ	

**Hard Declension when the ending is accented.**

Example : молодѡй, молодая, молодѡе = *young*.

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	молодѡй	молодая	молодѡе
G.	молодѡго	молодѡй	молодѡго

after which it is declined exactly like бѣлый, except that the accent is always on the ending, and on the first syllable of the ending when it is disyllabic.

**OBSERVATIONS.**

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. of the adjective is the same as that which governs the acc. sing. and pl. of masc. and the acc. pl. of fem. nouns, i. e. for an animate object it is always the same as the genitive and for an inanimate object the same as the nominative.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every fem. inst. sing., e. g. бѣлою or бѣлой.

3. The nominative singular and plural of the attributive form of the adjective arose through the affixing of the lost pronominal nominatives (which are given in scientific works as *яъ ja je*, pronounced *i ya ye*, whose place in the pronominal declension has been taken by *онъ она оно*) to nominatives of the predicative form, thus *бѣлый* = *бѣлъ* + *и* (*яъ*), *бѣлая* = *бѣла* + *я* (*ја*), *бѣлое* = *бѣло* + *е* (*је*). The form of the nom. sing. masc. is really of Old Bulgarian origin and has forced its way not only into Russian orthography but also into the living language, thanks to the influence of the Old Bulgarian ecclesiastical tradition in the Russian language; the real Russian form of the nom. sing. is *-ой*, which is still retained in adjectives which are accented on the ending, e. g. *молодой* = *young*.

The other cases were formed analogously, though the process is clearer in some than in others, e. g. *бѣлаго* = *бѣла* + *его*, *бѣлую* = *бѣлу* + *ю* (= *ју yu*, an old acc. of the pronominal declension), *бѣлому* = *бѣлу* + *ему*; in the other cases more drastic contraction has occurred.

4. Several very common adjectives (including names) are accented on the ending and declined like *молодой*, e. g. *передовой* = *foremost*, *золотой* = *golden*, *больной* = *ill*, *сѣдой* = *gray-haired*, *большой* = *big*, *Толстой* = *Tolstói* (while the adjective *толстый* = *thick, fat*, is declined like *бѣлый*). It may be mentioned that almost all Russian surnames are adjectives and must be declined adjectivally, e. g. *сочинѣнія Толстого* = *the works of Tolstói*, *я зналъ Толстого* = *I knew Tolstói*, *я знаю графиню Толстую* = *I know Countess Tolstói*, *Толстые* = *the Tolstóis*, *у Толстыхъ* = *at the house of the Tolstóis*. Also the ordinals: *второй* = *second*, *шестой* = *sixth*, *седьмой* = *seventh*, *восьмой* = *eighth*, and *сороковой* = *fortieth*.

5. Many adjectives ending in both *-ый* and *-ой* are used substantivally, e. g. *столовая* (с.с. *комната*) = *dining-room*, *гостиная* = *drawing-room*, *кладовая* = *store-room*, *насекомое* = *insect*, *животное* = *animal*, *портной* = *tailor*, *городовой* = *policeman*, *рядовой* = *private*, *ломовой* = *carter*, *больной* = *the patient, the invalid* (fem. *больная*), *чужой* = *stranger*, *мясное* = *the meat-course, joint*, *борзый* = *a wolf-hound* (lit. = *swift*), *золотой* = *a gold coin (ten roubles)*, and very commonly the names of streets, e. g. *Невский* (с.с. *проспектъ*) = *the Nevsky* (in Petrograd), *Морская* (с.с. *улица*) = *the Morskáya* (street in Petrograd).

6. The **ы** of the case-endings of those adjectives whose stems both end in **к**, **г**, and **х**, and are accented, becomes **и**, e.g. **крѣпкій** = *strong*, **крѣпкимъ**, **крѣпкіе**, &c. (with fem. **крѣпкая** and neut. **крѣпкое**), **маленькій** = *little*, **великій** = *great*, **широкій** = *broad*, **дикий** = *wild*, **строгий** = *severe*, **тихий** = *quiet*, **узкій** = *narrow*, **короткій** = *short*, **сладкій** = *sweet*, and many others; this category includes all adjectives derived from names of towns and countries, e.g. **москóвскій** = *of Moscow*, *Muscovite*, **петрогáдскій** = *of Petrograd*, **кíевскій** = *of Kiev*, **рíжскій** = *of Riga*, **русскій** = *Russian*, **нѣмѣцкій** = *German*, **францúзскій** = *French*, **англійскій** = *English*, and innumerable surnames which are often derived from names of places, e.g. **Оболѣнскій** = *Obolensky*, **Чайкóвскій** = *Tchaikovsky*, **Достóевскій** = *Dostoyevsky*, &c. It must not be forgotten that all such surnames are declined throughout, e.g. the wife and unmarried daughter or sister of a man called **Оболѣнскій** is **Оболѣнская**, his whole family **Оболѣнскіе**, &c., and that for a foreigner to say, e.g. *Madame Obolensky*, is just as correct as it would be to talk about the Emperor Catherine.

But when an adjective whose stem ends in **к**, **г**, or **х** is accented on the ending then it is declined like **молодóй**, and the **ы** only changes to **и** in the masc. and neut. inst. sing. and throughout the plural, e.g. **городскóй** = *belonging to the town* (nom. pl. **городскіе**), **дорогóй** = *dear* (inst. sing. **дорогíмъ**, nom. pl. **дорогіе**, &c.), as also those surnames of this category which are accented on the ending, e.g. **Трубецкóй** = *Trubetskoï* (nom. pl. **Трубецкіе** = *the Trubetskois*), **Шаховскóй** = *Shakhovskoi* (fem. **Шаховскáя**), &c.

In this category are included those adjectives whose stems end in **ж** and **ш**, and are accented on the ending, e.g. the very common words **чужóй** = *strange* (sc. *not known*), **чужіе** = *strangers*, **у чужíхъ** = *amongst strangers*, **въ чужомъ домѣ** = *in another person's house*, and **большóй** = *big*, **большóй домъ** = *a large house*, **большóй любíтель искусства** = *a great lover of art*, **большіе** often = *the grown-ups*.

7. The pronouns which are declined like adjectives all belong to the hard declension: **каждый** = *every, each*, **котóрый** = *which*, **нѣкотóрый** = *a certain, some* are declined exactly like **бѣлый**, **всѣкій** = *of every kind, every, each*, like **крѣпкій**, and **такóй**, **этакóй**, **таковóй** = *of such a kind, такой-же* = *of the same kind*, **какóй** and **каковóй** = *of what kind*, **другóй** = *other*, **никакóй** = *of no kind*, **нѣкóй** = *some*, **кѣй-какóй** = *a few*, and **любóй** = *any you like*, like **дорогóй** and **молодóй**.

These words are so very common that a few examples of their use are added: *каждый день* (acc.) = *every day*, *на каждомъ шагѣ* = *at every step*, *каждую минуту* (acc.) = *every minute*, *каждый знаетъ* = *every one knows*, *какой нѣмѣръ?* = *which number?* *какой часъ?* = *what time is it?* (lit. = *which hour?*), *въ какомъ часу?* = *at what o'clock?* *какое число сегодня?* = *what date is it to-day?* *нѣкоторые находятъ, что . . .* = *some consider* (lit. = *find*) *that . . .*, *нѣкоторый Иванъ* = *a certain [man called] Ivanov*, *до нѣкоторой стѣпени* = *to a certain extent*, *въ нѣкоторомъ родѣ* = *in a certain way, in some ways*, *всякій вздоръ* = *all sorts of rubbish*, *всякая книга* = *each book*, *всякія книги* = *all sorts of books*, *всякая всячина* = *odds and ends*, *онъ такой милый!* = *he is such a nice man!* (N.B. Russians never say такъ милый for so nice), *она такая милая!* = *she is such a nice woman!* *они такіе милые!* = *they are such nice people!* *въ такую погоду* = *in* (lit. into) *such weather*, *въ такое время* = *at such a time*, *такимъ образомъ* = *in this way* (lit. by such manner), which often comes to mean *by doing this*, *до такой стѣпени* = *to such an extent*, *такого рода* = *of such a sort* (e.g. *такого рода пьеса* = *a play of this sort*; the nom. often follows the gen., but can also precede it), *въ такомъ случаѣ* = *in such a case*, which comes to mean *since this is so*, *въ такомъ родѣ* = *in that manner, of that sort*, *такого-же рода*, *въ такомъ-же родѣ* = *of the same kind, in the same manner*, *какой онъ интересный!* = *how interesting he is!* *какая интересная книга!* = *what an interesting book!* *какой красивый мальчикъ!* = *what a beautiful boy!* *какая хорошая погода!* = *what nice weather!* *какая плохая (скверная) погода!* = *what bad (nasty) weather!* *какимъ образомъ?* = *in what manner?* *какія новости сегодня?* = *what news is there to-day?* *какого рода?* = *of what sort?* (e.g. *это какого рода пьеса?* = *what sort of a play is this?*), *какомъ родѣ* = *what like?* *какой вздоръ!* = *what rubbish!* *книга, каковую вы написали* = *a book of the sort which you have written*, *другой разъ* = *another time*, *другого рода* = *of another sort*, *на другой день* = *the next day*, *другимъ образомъ* = *in another way*, *другіе говорятъ* = *others say*, *никакимъ образомъ* = *in no way*, *ни въ какомъ случаѣ* = *in no case, in no eventuality*, which comes to mean *what-ever happens*, *ни за какіе ковришки* = *not for anything in the world* (lit. *not for any sort of little carpets*), *въ какомъ городѣ вы живѣте?* *ни въ какомъ* = *in which town do you live? not in any*, *кой-какія новости* = *some items of news*, *иной разъ* = *sometimes* (Germ. *manch-*

*mal*), иные говорятъ = *some say* (originally *иной* meant *one*, e.g. *инорогъ* = *unicorn*, but it also acquired the meaning *other*, e.g. *инородцы* = *people of other race than one's own*), кой-какія книги = *a few books of sorts*, въ любой часъ = *at any hour* (lit. *into*), въ любомъ городѣ = *in any town you like to mention*, въ любой день *any day you like* (lit. *into*).

There is a very idiomatic use of *каковѣй* as an interjection, usually expressing admiration at somebody's exploit, and it is always used in the predicative form and precedes the noun, e.g. *каковъ русскій балетъ!* = *well, what do you think of the Russian ballet, isn't it fine!* *какова пѣвица!* = *isn't she a splendid singer!* *каковъ урожай!* = *what a fine harvest!*

8. It is not absolutely true that all adjectives have both predicative and attributive forms. The two words *радъ* (fem. *рада*) = *glad* and *гораздъ* = *capable* have only the predicative form. To render their meaning when used attributively synonyms such as *радостный* = *joyful*, *способный* = *capable* must be used.

Conversely *большой* = *big* has no predicative form, and if used predicatively the synonym *великій* takes its place, e.g. *Россия велика* = *Russia is large*; further, all words in *-скій*, e.g. *русскій* = *Russian*, in *-ской*, e.g. *городской* = *of the town*, and adjectives denoting materials, e.g. *золотой* = *golden*, *каменный* = *of stone or brick*, have only the attributive form, e.g. *he is Russian* = *онъ русскій*, *my ring is of gold* = *моё кольцо золотое*, *this bridge is of stone* = *этотъ мостъ каменный*. Otherwise every adjective has both forms and the shorter must be used whenever the adjective is the predicate. To form a shorter from a longer adjective it is only necessary to cut off the endings *-ый*, *-я*, and *-е*, then for the masc. to substitute *-ъ* and for the fem. and neut. nothing; for the pl. cut off *-е*, *-я*; e.g. *милый*, *милая*, *милое* = *nice, dear*, short form = *милъ*, *милá*, *милó*, pl. *милы́*.

Examples of use: *милая дѣвочка* = *a nice little girl*, *дѣвочка мила* = *the little girl [is] nice*, while it is also possible to say *дѣвочка милая* = *the little girl is a nice* (sc. *little girl*), *дѣвочка такая милая* = *the little girl is such a nice* (sc. *little girl*); *онъ милый* = *he is a nice [man]*, *онъ такой милый* = *he is such a nice [man]*, *онъ милъ* = *he is nice*, *онъ такъ милъ* = *he is so nice*. The only difficulty that occurs in forming the short form is that in some cases in the nom. masc. sing. where, after cutting off the *-ый*, a group of consonants

difficult to pronounce would be left, a vowel is inserted; this is usually *e*, which when accented becomes *ě*, e.g. больной = *ill*—бóленъ, умный = *clever*—умѣнъ, сильный = *strong*—сѣленъ or силѣнъ, видный = *visible*—видѣнъ, спокойный = *calm*—спокóенъ; in the case of достойный = *worthy*, it is *и*—достóинъ; before -къ it is *о*, корóткий = *short*—корóтокъ; крѣпкий = *strong*—крѣпокъ; лёгкий = *light*—лёгкоъ (except after ж and ш, when it is *e*, e.g. тяжкѣй = *heavy*,—тяжekoъ). *О* also occurs in a few other words: злой = *bad-tempered, wicked*—зoль; полный = *full*—пóлонъ.

In many cases, however, groups of consonants, which might seem difficult to the foreigner, but are as nothing to Russians, are left without any vowel being inserted, e.g. мёртвый = *dead*—мёртъ; чѣрствый = *hard* (especially *stale*, of bread)—чѣрствъ.

9. It has been pointed out that in the language as it is spoken and written the predicative form of the adjective only occurs in the nominative; in the folk-poetry, however, which is epic in character, the other cases are often used, usually as fixed epithets for certain things, and recur with great frequency.

10. The first halves of compound adjectives which are hard end in *-о*, e.g. бѣлока́менный = *of white stone*, свѣтло-зе́лёный = *light green*, тёмно-сѣ́рый = *dark gray*, во́лжско-ка́мскій банкъ = *the bank of the Volga and the Kama*, ру́сско-нѣмцкѣй словарь = *a Russian-German dictionary*.

Corresponding to the soft declension of nouns, there is also one of adjectives, though the number included in it is very much smaller than that belonging to the hard declension:

## § 54.

## Soft Declension.

Example: сѣни́й, сѣ́няя, сѣ́нее = *dark blue*.

*Singular.*

	Мас.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	сѣни́й	сѣ́няя	сѣ́нее
G.	сѣ́няго	сѣ́ней	сѣ́няго
D.	сѣ́нему	сѣ́ней	сѣ́нему
A.	= N. or G.	сѣ́нюю	сѣ́нее
I.	сѣ́нимъ	сѣ́ней	сѣ́нимъ
L.	сѣ́немъ	сѣ́ней	сѣ́немъ

	Masc.	Plural. Fem.	Neut.
N.	сініе	сінія	
G.		сініхъ	
D.		сінімъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		сініми	
L.		сініхъ	

It will be observed that all the soft vowels in the endings of the soft declension correspond to the hard vowels in those of the hard declension, i. e. (и) i to ы, я to а, ю to у, е to о.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. masc. and fem. is the same as for the hard adjectives.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every inst. sing. fem., e. g. сінею and сіней.

3. The predicative form of the soft adjectives is practically never used.<sup>1</sup>

4. There are no soft adjectives having the accent on the ending.

5. There are a few soft adjectives which are used substantively, e. g. лóвчіи = *hunter*, стріпчіи = *attorney*, гóнчая (sc. соба́ка) = *sporting-dog* (cf. obs. 7), лѣ́тніи = *wood-demon*, перѣ́дня (sc. ко́мната) = *ante-room*.

6. The commonest adjectives declined like сініи are only a few in number, and are therefore given here: дрéвній = *ancient*, іскренній = *sincere*, внúтренній = *interior*, внѣшній = *exterior*, крайній = *extreme*, здѣ́шній = *belonging to this place, from here*, тамо́шній = *belonging to that place, from there*, вчє́рашній = *yesterday*, сє́рòдняшній = *of to-day*, зàвтрашній = *of to-morrow*, вє́сєнній (or вѣ́шній) = *vernal*, лѣ́тній = *summer*, осє́нній = *autumnal*, зímній = *winter*, послѣ́дній = *last*, срédній = *middle*, тепє́рєшній = *of to-day* (lit. *of now*), тогдàшній = *former* (lit. *of then*), прѣ́жній = *former*, зàдній = *hinder*, перѣ́дній = *front*, ўтронній = *morning*, вєчє́рній = *evening*, вѣ́рхній = *upper*, нї́жній = *lower* (Нї́жній Нòвгородъ = *Lower Newtown*), рàнній = *early*, пòздній = *late*.

<sup>1</sup> Except the very common forms: хорóшъ, хоро́шà, хоро́шò, pl. хоро́шї, горя́ть, -ча́, -чо́, -чі́, свѣ́жъ, -жа́, -жо́, -жі́, похóжъ, похóжа, похóже, похóжи, cf. p. 79.



7. Those soft adjectives which end in -и́й, -жй, -чй, and -мй are declined somewhat differently from синй, and as some of them are extremely common one is given in full :

хоро́шй, хоро́шая, хоро́шее = *nice, good, jolly.*

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хоро́шй	хоро́шая	хоро́шее
G.	хоро́шаго	хоро́шей	хоро́шаго
D.	хоро́шему	хоро́шей	хоро́шему
A.	= N. or G.	хоро́шую	хоро́шее
I.	хоро́шимъ	хоро́шей	хоро́шимъ
L.	хоро́шемъ	хоро́шей	хоро́шемъ

*Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хоро́шие	хоро́ния	
G.		хоро́шихъ	
D.		хоро́шимъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		хоро́щими	
L.		хоро́щихъ	

This is apparently a mixture of the hard and soft adjectives, but it is really soft, only the ш, ж, ч. and щ turn subsequent я, ы, о, ю into а, и (і), е, у. The following very common words are thus declined: горя́чй = *hot* (lit. = *burning*, e. g. in the phrase горя́чей воды (gen.) = *some hot water*), све́жй = *fresh*, похо́жй = *like*, ме́ньшй = *lesser, smaller*, бо́льшй = *greater, bigger*, лу́чшй = *better*, all superlatives in -и́й and all participles in -чй and -и́й.

8. The first halves of compound adjectives which are soft end in -е, e. g. сре́дне-ази́атскй = *Central Asian*, дре́вно-гре́цескй = *ancient Greek*.

N.B. The adjective derived from Ні́жній Но́вгородъ (cf. obs. 6) is нижего́родскй, e. g. нижего́родская губе́рнія = *the Government* (i. e. *Province*) of N. N.

9. Special attention must be called to the plurals:

мно́гіе = *many*, and

немно́гіе = *few*, which are declined like хоро́ние; the respective singulars are adverbs, мно́го = *much* and немно́го = *little*; нѣско́лько = *some* is similarly used except in the nom. plur. for which нѣ́которые is invariably substituted (cf. p. 75), e. g.

многіе находятъ, что . . . = *many people consider* (lit. *find*) *that* . . . (it would be impossible to use the adverb here), только у (очень) немногихъ свой экипажи = *only a (very) few have their own carriages*, въ нѣсколькихъ случаяхъ = *in several cases*. The singular of многіе is also used, e. g. во многомъ эта книга мнѣ правится = *there is much in this book that pleases me* (lit. *this book in much*).

### § 55. Declension of Possessive Adjectives.

There is a large number of these in Russian, and as the declension is different from that of the ordinary adjective, an example is given in full :

Ивановъ = *belonging to Ivan* (= *John*).

#### *Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Ивановъ	Иванова	Иваново
G.	Иванова	Ивановой	Иванова
D.	Иванову	Ивановой	Иванову
A.	= N. or G.	Иванову	Иваново
I.	Ивановымъ	Ивановой	Ивановымъ
L.	Ивановомъ	Ивановой	Ивановомъ

#### *Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Ивановы		
G.	Ивановыхъ		
D.	Ивановымъ		
A.	= N. or G.		
I.	Ивановыми		
L.	Ивановыхъ		

Ивановъ may mean either *belonging to Ivan*, e. g. Ивановъ домъ, or it may be the surname *Ivanov*, which in this case is an ellipse standing for Ивановъ сынъ = *Ivan's son*, or *Johnson*; Иванова may mean *belonging to Ivan* (fem.), e. g. Иванова сестра = *Ivan's sister*, or by itself, prefixed by Госпожа (Mrs. or Miss) it means *Miss* or *Mrs. Ivanov*—Госпожа Иванова = *Mrs. Johnson*; Иваново may mean *belonging to Ivan* (neut.) or it may be the name of a village, when the word село is understood, originally called after Ivan; Ивановы may mean anything belonging to Ivan in the plural, or it may mean by itself *the Ivanovs*. Surnames and names of places formed in this way are endless, e. g. Павловъ = *Paul's*, '(Mr.) *Paul-*

*son*', Пáвлова = '(Mrs. or Miss) *Paulson*', Пётрoвъ = *Peter's*, *Peterson*, Попо́въ = *priest's* (from по́пъ = *a priest*, a very common surname), and include many fantastic names of sometimes curious origin, e. g. Абри́косовъ (*apricot's*), Филосо́фовъ (*philosopher's*), Грибо́вдовъ (*mushroom-eater's*). It is from these words that the well-known Russian patronymics are formed by adding to them -ичъ (which is a diminutive with the special meaning *son of*) for the masculine and -на for the feminine, and it must be remembered that it is by their Christian names together with their patronymics that all Russians address one another, unless they are strangers or very intimate friends or relations. For example, if a man's surname is Попо́въ, his father's name Пётръ (*Peter*), and his own Christian name Па́велъ (*Paul*), his friends will all call him Па́велъ Петро́вичъ; let us say that his wife's name is А́нна (*Anne*) and her father's Christian name Ива́нъ, her full name will be А́нна Ива́новна Попова, and all her friends will call her А́нна Ива́новна. There is a number of possessive adjectives from soft stems corresponding to the hard represented by Ива́новъ, e. g. Андре́й = *Andrew*, makes Андре́евъ; Васи́лий = *Basil*—Васи́льевъ; Серге́й = *Sergius*—Серге́евъ. In this category are included names of not purely Russian origin such as Тургене́въ = *Turgénév*.

Besides there is a large number of names and words which form their possessive adjectives in -инъ, -ынъ, instead of in -овъ (the case-endings are exactly the same), e. g. Тома́ (*Thomas*) makes Томи́нъ, fem. Томина́ with patronymic Томи́чъ (*Thomas's son*); Ильи́ (*Elias*)—Ильи́нъ (patronymics Ильи́чъ, fem. Ильи́нична); Никита́ (*Victor*)—Ники́тинъ (the name of a well-known poet); цари́ца (*tsaritsa*, *empress*)—Цари́цынъ (a large town on the Volga, sc. го́родъ). Цари́чно (sc. село́, a place near Moscow), while царь makes царе́въ. This category includes such words as мужни́нъ = *husband's* (from мужъ = *husband*), жени́нъ = *wife's* (жена́), бра́тнинъ = *brother's* (братъ), and сёстры́нъ = *sister's* (сестра́), and those derived from diminutives, e. g. Серге́инъ from Серге́жа = Серге́й = *Sergius*, Саши́нъ from Са́ша = Алекса́ндръ or Алекса́ндра = *Alexander* and *Alexandra*. Господь = *the Lord* makes Господе́нь, Господня́, Господне́.

All these possessive adjectives have only the predicative form.

Finally there is a large category of possessive adjectives formed especially from names of animals, but including some others;



The terminations -ѣхонькій, -ѣхонькій, -ѣшенъкій imply completeness; very often the adjective in its original form precedes the other; these forms are usually used predicatively:

сытъ-сытѣхонекъ = *absolutely satiated (with food)*,

одинъ-одинѣхонекъ = *quite alone*.

The terminations -енькій and -онькій are diminutive:

маленькій = *small* (from малыі, which is seldom used).

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

### § 57. The Predicative Comparative.

The comparative is formed by cutting off the -ыі (or -оі) of the attributive form of the adjective and adding -ѣ (or -ѣі) to the stem.

The word thus formed has no singular or plural and is indeclinable; also it can only be used predicatively.

In the case of words of more than three syllables the comparative can be formed by using the positive prefixed by the adverb, болѣе = *more*, as in English, e. g. *more intelligible*.

Comparison can be expressed in three ways: by the words

- |                                    |                 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (1) чѣмъ (inst. sing. of что), and | } = <i>than</i> |
| (2) нежели                         |                 |

followed by the nominative, and (3) by the genitive of comparison.

Examples: длинный = *long*, ср. длиннѣе,

эта палка длиннѣе чѣмъ та = *this stick [is] longer than that*,

красивый = *beautiful*, ср. красивѣе,

мои цвѣты красивѣе вашихъ (gen.) = *my flowers [are] more beautiful than yours*,

прямой = *straight*, ср. пряжѣе,

эта дорога пряжѣе той (gen.) = *this road [is] straighter than that*,

or purely predicatively:

эта палка длиннѣе = *this stick [is the] straighter*.

If the comparative is followed by еѹ = *his*, еѣ = *hers*, or ихъ = *theirs*, a conjunction is necessary, e. g.

мой домъ красивѣе нежели еѹ = *my house [is] more beautiful than his*, since красивѣе еѹ would mean *more beautiful than he*.

An example of an adjective of more than three syllables :

образованный = *cultured*; predic. comp. больше образованъ (after which a conjunction is necessary) or образованнѣе,

мы больше образованы чѣмъ они = *we [are] more cultured than they.*

Больше is also invariably used with радъ = *glad*, which has no comparative, and with свежий = *fresh* and чверстый = *hard, stale* (of bread), and похожий = *like*, e.g.,

это больше похоже на + acc. = *this is more like . . .*

To express *less* the adverb меньше with similar construction is used, e. g.,

они меньше образованы чѣмъ мы = *they are less cultured than we.*

A very large number of adjectives, however, form their comparatives by adding -е instead of -ѣе. Some of these are adjectives whose stems originally ended in a consonant, such as к, liable to be softened into ч before the palatal ѣ and absorbing it in the process, others are the result of analogical influence or quite irregular. As they are all extremely common words a full list is given :

высокій = <i>high, tall</i>	ср. выше
низкій = <i>low</i>	„ ниже
глубокий = <i>deep</i>	„ глубже
мелкій = <i>shallow (also petty, small change, fine print or writing)</i>	„ мельче
широкий = <i>broad</i>	„ шире
узкий = <i>narrow</i>	„ уже <sup>1</sup>
далёкий = <i>distant</i>	„ дальше
близкий = <i>near</i>	„ ближе
толстый = <i>thick, fat</i> { especially }	„ толще
тонкий = <i>thin</i> { of solids }	„ тоньше
густой = <i>thick</i> { especially of }	„ гуще
жидкий = <i>thin</i> { liquids and gases }	„ жидче
редкий = <i>rare, sparse</i>	„ реже
ранний = <i>early</i>	„ раньше
долгий = <i>long</i> (of time)	„ дольше
короткий = <i>short</i>	„ короче
крепкий = <i>strong</i>	„ крепче
простой = <i>simple</i>	„ проще

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confused with the conjunction уже = *already*.

стро́гий = <i>severe</i>	сп. стро́же
тихи́й = <i>calm, slow</i>	„ ти́ше
лёгки́й = <i>light</i>	„ лёгче
дорого́й = <i>dear</i>	„ доро́же
дешёвы́й = <i>cheap</i>	„ дешёв́е
богаты́й = <i>rich</i>	„ богаче
молодо́й = <i>young</i>	„ моло́же
ста́рый = <i>old</i>	„ ста́рше
чи́стый = <i>clean</i>	„ чи́ще
твёрды́й = <i>firm, hard</i>	„ твёр́же
сла́дкий = <i>sweet</i>	„ сла́ще
гору́чий = <i>bitter</i>	„ гору́че
жа́ркий = <i>hot</i>	„ жа́рче
большо́й = <i>big</i>	„ большо́е
малы́й (мале́нький) = <i>little</i>	„ ме́ньше
хоро́ший = <i>nice, good</i>	„ лу́чше
худо́й (плохо́й, дурно́й) = <i>bad</i>	„ ху́же

A few adjectives have two forms of the comparative :

тяжё́лый = *heavy*, сп. тяжё́ле and тяжёл́е

позд́ий = *late*, сп. поз́же and поздн́е.

Худо́й has two meanings, (1) *thin* (of human beings and animals) and (2) *bad*; the comparative of the first meaning is худ́е and of the second ху́же. *Fat* (of human beings and animals) is usually rendered by полны́й (сп. полно́е) = *full*, though толсты́й (but only in the positive) is also used less politely of human beings.

As regards the accent the following rule may be mentioned: all so-called irregular comparatives (e.g. большо́е) are accented on the penultimate. Of the others, adjectives of two syllables are accented on the 2 of -ёе; also зло́й = *wicked*—зл́е. Adjectives of more than two syllables keep the accent in the comparative where it was in the positive, e.g. краси́вый = *beautiful*—краси́вее; to this rule there are a few exceptions :

здоровы́й = *healthy* сп. здоров́е

холо́дный = *cold* „ холо́дн́е

гору́чий = *hot* „ гору́ч́е

(гору́чий is used of substances, e.g. water, food, also of the emotions; жа́ркий is used especially of the weather; тёплый = *warm* (сп. тепл́е) is used for everything).

## § 58.

## The Attributive Comparative.

When the comparative is used, not for purposes of strict comparison but as an attributive adjective expressing a stronger degree of any quality than is expressed by the positive, the form in *-ѣ*, &c., cannot be employed. Instead it must be either expressed by using *болѣ* with the positive or by another special form which some adjectives possess; this form ends in *-ѣйшій*, *-ѣишій*, *-ишій*, or *-ишѣ* and is declined like *хорошій* (or like *молодой*).

As only a few adjectives are commonly used in this form a full list is given :

*высокій* = *high, tall*, ср. *высшій*, e. g.

*вышше чины* = *the upper ranks* (of officials)

*въ высшей степенн* = *in the highest* (lit. *very high*) *degree*

*низкій* = *low*, ср. *нижшій*, e. g.

*нижшя цѣны* = *lower prices*

*нижше мѣсто* = *a lower place*

*далный* = *distant*, ср. *дальнѣйшій*, e. g.

*дальнѣйшее развитіе* = *the subsequent development* (there is no attributive comparative from *далекій*)

*старый* = *old*, ср. *старшій*, e. g.

*старшій братъ* = *elder brother*

*молодой* = *young*, ср. *младшій* (from another stem *млад-*), e. g.

*младшая дочь* = *younger daughter*

[*хорошій* = *nice, good*], ср. *лучшій*, e. g.

*лучше магазины* = *the superior shops*

*худой* = *bad*, ср. *худшій*, e. g.

*худшіе сорта* = *inferior sorts*

*большой* = *big*, ср. *большій*, e. g.

*большую частью* = *for the greater part*

*большіе города* = *the larger towns*

*малый* (*маленькій*) = *little*, ср. *меньшій* = *lesser* and *меньшой* = *younger*, e. g.

*самое меньшее* = *the very least*

*меньшой сынъ* = *younger* (or *youngest*) *son*.

The form in *-ѣйшій* and *-ѣишій* possessed by several adjectives, e. g. *слабый* = *weak*, *слабѣйшій*, *крѣпкій* = *strong*, *крѣпчайшій*, is in meaning rather a superlative (like our *very weak, very strong*)



than a comparative. In almost all cases except those mentioned the attributive comparative can be and is usually expressed by *болѣ* with the positive, e. g.

*это болѣ красивая шляпа* = *this [is] the prettier hat.*

*Rather* + the positive or comparative is expressed by *по-* and the comparative, e. g.

*мнѣ нужна палка по-длиннѣе* = *I want (to me is necessary) a rather long(er) stick*

*я хочу что-нибудь по-лучше, по-красивѣе, по-дешевле* = *I want something rather better (superior), prettier, cheaper (sc. than what you've shown me).*

### § 59.

### The Superlative.

The superlative can be expressed in several ways; the commonest way is to use the pronoun *самый* with the positive (and in some cases the comparative), e. g.

*самый красивый* = *most beautiful*

*самый некрасивый* = *ugliest*

*самый лучший* = *best*

*самый плохой*  
*самый скверный* } = *worst*

*самый большой* = *biggest*

*самый маленький* = *smallest*

*самый старший* = *eldest*

*самый младший* = *youngest*

*самый высший* = *highest*

*самый низший* = *lowest*

*самый крепкий* = *strongest*

*самый слабый* = *weakest, &c.*

These can be used either predicatively or attributively, e. g.

*самый лучший магазинъ* = *the best shop*

*это будетъ самое лучшее* = *that will be the best (sc. way).*

Another way of forming the superlative is by means of the prefix *наи-*, but only a few adjectives (always comparatives) are treated in this way and even they are seldom used, the form being considered archaic and pedantic. The commonest are :

*наилучший* = *best*

*наибольшій* = *biggest*

*наименьший* = *smallest*

Another way of expressing *very* is by means of the prefix *пре-*, which is followed by the positive; this form is quite common, e. g.

прехорошенький = *very pretty*

преподобный = *very reverend*

прескверный = *very bad*

*пре-* also occurs in the word превосходный = *excellent*.

The termination *-ѣйшій, -ѣйшій* is added to a few adjectives with the meaning of a superlative; the commonest are:

высокій = *high*, superl. высочайшій

великій = *great*, superl. величайшій

малый = *little*, superl. малѣйшій

e. g. безъ малѣйшаго сомнѣнія = *without the smallest doubt*

глубокій = *deep*, superl. глубочайшій

чистый = *clean, pure*, superl. чистѣйшій

любезный = *amiable*, superl. любезнѣйшій

дорогой = *dear*, superl. дражайшій (from a stem *драз-*).

Yet another way of expressing the superlative predicatively is by the predicative comparative followed by *всѣхъ*, e. g.

это мѣсто лучше всѣхъ = *this place [is] the best of all*.

## THE NUMERALS

### § 60. The Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

1	одинъ, одна, одно	первый
2	два (M. and N.) двѣ (F.)	второй
3	три	третій
4	четыре	четвёртый
5	пять	пятый
6	шесть	шестой
7	семь	седьмой
8	восемь	восьмой
9	девять	девятый
10	десять	десятый
11	одиннадцать	одиннадцатый
12	двѣнадцать	двѣнадцатый
13	тринадцать	тринадцатый

14	четы́рнадцатъ	четы́рнадцатый
15	пятна́дцатъ	пятна́дцатый
16	шестна́дцатъ	шестна́дцатый
17	се́мнадца́тъ	се́мнадца́тый
18	восемна́дцатъ	восемна́дцатый
19	девятна́дцатъ	девятна́дцатый
20	два́дцатъ	два́дцатый
21	два́дцатъ оди́нъ одна́, &c.	два́дцатъ пе́рвый
22	два́дцатъ два́, двѣ	два́дцатъ второ́й
23	два́дцатъ три́	два́дцатъ тре́тій
30	три́дцатъ	три́дцатый
40	соро́къ	соро́ковъй
50	пятьдеся́тъ	пятидеся́тый
60	шестьдеся́тъ	шестидеся́тый
70	се́мьдеся́тъ	семидеся́тый
80	восемьдеся́тъ	восемьдеся́тый
90	девяно́сто	девяно́стый
100	сто	со́тый
200	двѣсти	двухсо́тый
300	три́ста	трѣхсо́тый
400	четы́реста	четы́рехсо́тый
500	пятьсо́тъ	пятисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	ты́сячный
2,000	двѣ ты́сячи	двухты́сячный
5,000	пять ты́сячъ	пяти́тысячный
10,000	деся́тъ ты́сячъ	деся́титы́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячъ	сто́тысячный
1,000,000	милліо́нъ	милліо́нный

# § 61. Declension and Use of the Numerals.

Оди́нъ is declined as follows :

*Singular.*

	<b>Masc.</b>	<b>Fem.</b>	<b>Neut.</b>
<b>N.</b>	оди́нъ	одна́	одно́
<b>G.</b>	одного́	одно́й	одного́
<b>D.</b>	одному́	одно́й	одному́
<b>A.</b>	= <b>N.</b> or <b>G.</b>	одну́	одно́
<b>I.</b>	оди́нмъ	одно́й	оди́нмъ
<b>L.</b>	оди́номъ	одно́й	оди́номъ

	Plural.		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
N.	одни́		одна́
G.	одни́хъ		одна́хъ
D.	одни́мъ		одна́мъ
A.	= N. or G.		= N. or G.
I.	одни́ми		одна́ми
L.	одни́хъ		одна́хъ

The plural of *одинъ* is used in several ways, e. g.

одни́ . . . . . другіе . . . . . = *some . . . . . others . . . . .*

одна́ да́мы = *ladies only*

мы одни́ { = (1) *only we*  
= (2) *we [are] alone*

одни́ми рука́ми = *with the hands only*

but одна́й рука́й = *with one hand*

одни́ми слова́ми = *by words alone*

but однимъ сло́вомъ = *in one word*

одна́ Богъ зна́етъ = *God alone knows*

одно́ и то́-же = *one and the same thing*

однообра́зны́й = *monotonous*.

*Одинъ, одна́, одно́* is used in all numbers compounded with 1 according to the gender of the substantive which follows, which is always in the nom. sing., e. g.

два́дцать одна́го го́да = *twenty-one years*

со́рокъ одна́го рубль = *forty-one roubles*

ты́сяча и одна́ но́чь = *the thousand and one nights*.

	два, двѣ = <i>two</i> .		Fem.	оба, обе́ = <i>both</i> .		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.		Masc.	Neut.	
N.	два		двѣ	оба		обе́
G.		двухъ		обоихъ		обе́ихъ
D.		двумъ		обоимъ		обе́имъ
A.		= N. or G.			= N. or G.	
I.		двуми́		обоими́		обе́ими
L.		двухъ		обоихъ		обе́ихъ

три = *three*, четыре = *four*.

N.	три	четыре
G.	трѣхъ	четырёхъ
D.	трёмъ	четырёхъ
A.	= N. or G.	= N. or G.
I.	трёмѣ	четырёхѣ
L.	трѣхъ	четырёхъ

Substantives of any gender which follow два, три, and четыре, as well as all numerals compounded with these three, are invariably in the gen. sing., not in the nom. pl. The reason for this is that два originally took the dual and the nom. dual masc. ended in -а, i. e. was in appearance identical with the gen. sing. When the dual became obsolete the ending -а still continued to be used after два but came to be looked on as the gen. sing. Subsequently through analogical influence the gen. sing. of feminine nouns was used after двѣ, and also the gen. sing. of nouns of all genders came to be used after три and четыре as well as after два. The old dual is still apparent in the word двѣсти = 200; e. g.

два брата = *two brothers*

три стола = *three tables*

двѣ сестры = *two sisters* (nom. pl. = сѣстры)

четыре селѣ = *four villages* (nom. pl. = сѣла)

двѣдцать два года = *twenty-two years*

сто три рубля = *one hundred and three rubles, &c.*

If an adjective comes between the numeral and the noun, it can be in either the nom. pl. or the gen. pl., not in the singular, as might be expected, e. g.

двѣ красивыя (or красивыхъ) дѣвочки = *two pretty little girls*

три большіе (or большихъ) дома = *three large houses*.

The effect of putting the numeral after the noun is to make the former somewhat indefinite :

дни два = *about two days, two or three days*

года четыре = *about four years*.

Of course, if used in any other case but the nominative, both numeral and substantive, and when there is an adjective, that also, agree, the regular cases of the plural being used, e. g.

N. два маленькихъ мальчика = *two little boys*

G. двухъ маленькихъ мальчиковъ = *of two little boys*

D. двумъ маленькимъ мальчикамъ = *to „ „ „ &c.*

N. три сестры́ = *three sisters*

G. трёхъ сестёръ = *of* „

D. трёхъ сёстрамъ = *to* „  
or сестрамъ, &c.

As regards оба, обо́ the masc. and neut. take the gen. sing., but the fem. takes the nom. pl., hence :

оба брата

оба сёлá (nom. pl. would be сёла)

but обо́ сёстры (gen. sing. would be сестры́).

Пять = *five*, and all numerals ending in -ь up to and including тридцать :

	Masc. Neut. Fem.
N.	пять
G.	пяти́
D.	пяти́
A.	пять
I.	пятью́
L.	пяти́

N.B. восемь has G. D. L. восьми́ and I. восьмью́.

Пятьдесятъ = *fifty*, шестьдесятъ = *sixty*, семьдесятъ = *seventy*,  
восемьдесятъ = *eighty* :

	Masc. Neut. Fem.
N.	пятьдесятъ
G.	пяти́десяти
D.	пяти́десяти
A.	пятьдесятъ
I.	пятью́десятью
L.	пяти́десяти

The numbers from пять onwards are really feminine nouns, equivalent for example to the French *une cinquaine*.

The numbers from 11-19 are composed of the single numerals and ten joined together by на = *on to*, e. g.

трина́дцать = три на десять = *three on to ten*.

Два́дцать and три́дцать are *two-tens* and *three-tens*.

In пятьдесятъ, шестьдесятъ, семьдесятъ and восемьдесятъ the -десятъ is an old gen. pl. and пятьдесятъ might be translated in French *une cinquaine de dizaines*.

Сорокъ = *forty* (from the Greek τεσσαράκοντα) is declined like столъ, i. e.

- G. сорока  
D. сороку, &c.,

and девяносто = *ninety* and сто = *one hundred* are declined like a hard neuter noun except when followed by a noun, when they have only one ending for all the cases, viz. -а, e. g.

ста рублями = *with a hundred roubles.*

въ сорока случаяхъ = *in forty cases.*

Also when compounded with other numerals, e. g.

въ ста шести домахъ = *in one hundred and six houses.*

Двѣсти = 200, триста = 300, четыреста = 400, пятьсотъ = 500, &c.

N.	двѣсти	триста	четыреста	пятьсотъ
G.	двухъ сотъ	трѣхъ сотъ	четырёхъ сотъ	пяти сотъ
D.	двумъ стамъ	трёмъ стамъ	четыремъ стамъ	пяти стамъ
A.	= N. or G.			
I.	двумя стами	тремя стами	четырьмя стами	пятью стами
L.	двухъ стахъ	трѣхъ стахъ	четырёхъ стахъ	пяти стахъ

Тысяча is declined like a feminine noun in -ча

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N.	тысяча	e. g. двѣ тысяч	пять тысячъ
G.	тысячи	двухъ тысячъ	пяти тысячъ
D.	тысячъ	двумъ тысячамъ	пяти тысячамъ
A.	тысячу	= N. or G.	
I.	тысячей (also тысячью)	двумя тысячами	пятью тысячами
L.	тысячъ	двухъ тысячахъ	пяти тысячахъ

миллионъ is declined like столъ, but with the accent fixed on the third syllable throughout.

The substantives which follow all numerals ending in -ъ from 5 onwards, except compounds of 1, 2, 3, and 4, such as 21, 32, 44, &c., provided the numerals are in the nom. or acc., are always in the gen. pl. The reason for this is that, as has already been stated, пять, &c., are really feminine substantives, and so the noun following is naturally put in the gen. pl. This can be seen in the word пятьдесятъ = 50, which is really a nom. sing. (пять) followed by a (now obsolete) gen. pl. (десять) and means *a five of tens*. If followed by any other cases than the nom. or acc. both numeral

and substantive agree, as in the case of два, три, &c. Besides the numerals which end in -ь, сорокъ = 40, сто = 100, двѣсти = 200, триста = 300, &c., тысяча = 1,000, and миллионъ come under the above rule, e. g.

пять рублёй = *five roubles*

десять дней = *ten days*

but N.B. съ пятью дѣтьми = *with five children*.

## § 62. Cardinal Numbers in Composition.

Одинъ makes одно-, e. g. однодворецъ = *freeholder* (peasant).

Два makes дву- and двух-, e. g. двуглавый = *double-headed*, двусмысленный = *ambiguous*, двухлѣтний = *two-year-old*, but двухэтажный = *two-storied* (house), двухмѣстный = *having two seats*.

Три makes тре- in треугольный = *three-cornered*, otherwise трѣх-; e. g. трѣхлѣтний = *three-year-old*, трѣхрублёвый = *of three roubles*.

Четыре makes четверо- in четвероугольный = *four-cornered*, square, otherwise четырёх-; e. g. четырёхэтажный = *of four floors*.

All others end in -и, e. g. семилѣтняя война = *the seven years' war*.

Notice the forms : двоюродный братъ = *first cousin* (masc.)

двоюродная сестра = „ „ (fem.)

троюродный, &c. = *second cousin*.

For numerals in composition in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

## § 63. Ordinal Numbers.

The ordinal numbers are declined like attributive adjectives, второй, шестой, седьмой, восьмой, and сороковой like молодой, третий like рыбій, and the rest like бѣлый. The ordinals have no short or predicative form, hence

я первый = *I am the first*.

The following idiomatic uses of the ordinals may be observed :

во-первыхъ = *firstly, in the first place*

во-вторыхъ = *secondly*

во-третьихъ = *thirdly*

самъ-третій = *I and two others*

самъ-четвёртый = *I and three others*.

For the use of the ordinals in the expression of time, cf. § 68.



§ 64.

**Distributive Numbers.**

These are expressed by prefixing the preposition *по* to the cardinal numbers; *два, три, четыре*, and *о́поко* remain in the nom. and the following substantive in the gen. sing. or plur., but all the other numbers are put in the dat. with the substantive in the dat. after *о́динъ* and in the gen. plur. after all the others, e.g.

о́нъ подарѣлъ намъ по о́дно́й кни́гѣ = *he gave us one book each*

у насъ по́ двѣ, у васъ по́ три, а у нихъ по́ четы́ре соба́ки = *we have two, you have three, and they have four dogs each*

у обо́ихъ по́ пять лошаде́й = *they have both five horses each.*

For the use of the distributives in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

§ 65.

**Multiplicative Numerals.**

These are expressed as follows:

разъ	= once (lit. = a blow)
два́ ра́за	= twice (lit. = two blows)
три́ ра́за	= thrice
четы́ре ра́за	= four times
пять ра́зъ	= five times.

*шесть разъ*, &c.; *разъ* is the old gen. plur. still used in a few phrases of this kind where it had become crystallized; the gen. plur. in *-о́нъ* originally belonged to only a few nouns, but became general gradually.

In counting (for games, music, &c.) the formula is: *разъ, два, три, четыре* = *one, two, three, four*.

The three words *о́днажды* = *once*, *два́жды* = *twice*, and *три́жды* = *thrice*, were borrowed from Old Bulgarian, but are almost obsolete; *о́днажды* is still sometimes used for *one fine day*, or *once upon a time*, but *разъ* or *о́динъ разъ* is more usual.

Notice the following idioms in which *разъ* occurs:

ско́лько ра́зъ (gen. pl.) = *how many times, how often*

мно́го ра́зъ (gen. pl.) = *many times*

не́сколько ра́зъ (gen. pl.) = *several times*

сра́зу (gen. sing.) = *all at once, suddenly*

and especially the difference between:

не́ра́зъ = *more than once*

e.g. я не́ра́зъ гово́рилъ . . . = *I have said more than once . . .*

and ни́ ра́зу не . . . = *not once*

e.g. о́нъ ни́ ра́зу не́былъ у насъ = *he has not once been at our house.*

The expression *twice as* is rendered by въ-двое with the comparative, e. g.

это вино въ-двое лучше того = *this wine is twice as good as that.*

ваше перо въ-трие дороже моего = *your pen is three times as dear as mine.*

For larger numbers it is more usual to turn it, e. g.

этотъ театръ въ тысячу разъ красивѣе чѣмъ тотъ = *this theatre is a thousand times more beautiful than that.*

Expressions such as *ten-fold*, used predicatively, are rendered by въ-десятеро, &c.

The adjectival multiplicatives :

двойной = *double, two-fold*,

тройной = *treble, three-fold*,

are quite common and are declined like молодой.

*Simple* = простой.

## § 66.

## Collective Numerals.

These are used for the numbers from 2-8 and 10 :

2	двое	6	шестеро
3	трое	7	семеро
4	четверо	8	восьмеро
5	пятеро	10	десятеро

двое and трое are declined as follows :

N.	двое
G.	двоихъ
D.	двоимъ.
A.	= N. or G.
I.	двоими
L.	двоихъ

the others :

N.	четверо
G.	четверыхъ
D.	четверымъ
A.	= N. or G.
I.	четверими
L.	четверыхъ

These numerals are especially common in phrases such as the following:

насъ трое = *there are three of us*, which also means *we three* (it would be impossible to say мы три), у меня четверо дѣтей = *I have four children*, ихъ было шестеро = *there were* (lit. *was*) *six of them*, and with nouns which are only used in the plural, e. g. сани = *sledge*, шестеро саней = *six sledges*, часы = *watch, clock*, трое часовъ = *three watches*. Notice сотня = 100 (often sc. *soldiers*).

N.B. въ-двоёмъ = *tête-à-tête*

въ троёмъ = *à trois*

пара (лошадей) = *a pair of horses*

тройка = *three horses abreast*

четвёрка = *four* „ „

Троица = *the Trinity*

дюжина = *a dozen*, but must only be used of things, never of people

десятокъ = *ten*, e. g. десятки тысячъ = *tens of thousands*

близнецы = *twins*.

Notice the curious idiom я самъ-другъ = *I and another*.

двойка = *deuce* (at cards)

семёрка = *seven*

тройка = *three*

восьмёрка = *eight*

четвёрка = *four*

девятка = *nine*

пятёрка = *five*

десятка = *ten*.

шестёрка = *six*

For the use of the collectives as multiplicatives cf. § 65.

### § 67.

#### Fractions.

Половина = *a half*, and is declined like a hard fem. noun, with the accent fixed on the third syllable.

$2\frac{1}{2}$  = два (or двѣ) съ половиной

$3\frac{1}{2}$  = три съ половиной, &c.

For  $1\frac{1}{2}$  there is a special word:

полтора (made up of пол- and второѣ = *half-second*) for the masculine, and полторы for the feminine, e. g.

N. полтора фунта (gen. sing.) =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb.

полторы сажени „ „ =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  fathom.

For all the other cases the form полтора is used for both genders, the noun being declined in the plural, e. g. полтора фунтовъ.

150 = полторáста

N. полторáста

G. D. I. L. полутора́ста

*Half-* in composition is treated as follows :N. полу́нта =  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.

G. полу́нта

D. полу́нту

A. = N.

I. полу́нтомъ

L. полу́нтъ

The plural is полу́нты, &c., like an ordinary hard masculine noun.

по́лрюмки = *half a wine-glass* would be declined similarly, but with the feminine substantival endings.

For по́лдень and по́лночь cf. § 68.

$\frac{1}{3}$  = треть, a feminine noun declined like ло́шадь but with the accent fixed on the first syllable;

$\frac{2}{3}$  = двѣ трѣти ;

$\frac{1}{4}$  = чѣтверть, feminine, declined like треть ;

$\frac{3}{4}$  = три чѣтверти.

Other fractions are expressed as follows :

$\frac{1}{5}$  = одна́ пятая (acc. часть = *part*) ;

$\frac{2}{5}$  = двѣ́ пятыхъ ;

$\frac{3}{7}$  = три се́дмыхъ.

## § 68.

## Expression of Time.

Часъ = *hour* (N.B. часы́ = *watch* or *clock*)

*what time is it ?* = ко́торый часъ ?

*at what hour . . . ?* = въ ко́торомъ часу́ . . . ? (cf. § 89, oba. 7)

1 o'clock = часъ (acc. пѣрвый = *first*)

at „ = въ часъ

1.15 = часъ съ чѣтвертью (=  $1\frac{1}{4}$ )

ог чѣтверть второ́го (=  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the 2nd)

1.5 = пять мину́тъ второ́го (= 5 min. of the 2nd)

1.30 = полови́на второ́го

ог второ́го полови́на

at 1.30 = въ полови́ну второ́го

## EXPRESSION OF TIME

99

1.45	= безъ четверти два (= <i>without</i> $\frac{1}{4}$ 2)
at 1.45	= " " "
	огъ въ часъ sóрокъ пять
2 o'clock	= два часа́
at "	= въ два часа́
at about "	= часа́ въ два
2.10	= де́сять ми́нута́ трéтьяго
2.30	= полови́на трéтьяго
3 o'clock	= три часа́
3.50	= безъ десяти́ (ми́нута́) четы́ре
4 o'clock	= четы́ре часа́
5 "	= пять часо́въ
10.30	= полови́на оди́надцатаго
12 o'clock	= двѣ́надцать часо́въ
12.15	= четы́рть пе́рваго
12.30	= полови́на пе́рваго
12.45	= безъ четверти часъ
12.55	= безъ пяти́ (ми́нута́) часъ.

<i>half-an-hour</i>	= полчаса́
2 hours	= два часа́
2½ hours	= два часа́ съ полови́ной
1½ hour	= полтора́ часа́.

Notice especially the word *су́тки* (nom. pl. fem.) = *the 24 hours*,  
a day and night, e. g.

трѣ́е су́токъ (gen. pl.)	= 72 hours
цѣ́лая су́тки	= a whole 24 hours
четы́ре су́токъ	= four days and nights
пять су́токъ	= five " "

<i>minute</i>	= ми́нута
'one minute'	= одну́ ми́нута́, ми́нута́чку
'this minute'	= сию́ ми́нута́
<i>second</i>	= секун́да
<i>this instant</i>	= сию́ секун́ду
	огъ сей-часъ
<i>in one minute</i>	= въ одну́ ми́нута́
<i>in five minutes</i>	= че́резъ пять ми́нута́
<i>in two hours</i>	= че́резъ два часа́

N.B. *черезъ* can also give the meaning *every other*:

*черезъ часъ* = (1) *in an hour's time*  
 (2) *every other hour.*

Notice the difference between :

*about two hours* = *около* (adv.) *два часа*

*about two o'clock* = *около* (prep.) *двухъ часовъ*

*every minute* (*incessantly*) = *по-минутно*

*полдень* = *midday*

Gen. *полудня*

Loc. *полудни*

The phrase *по-полудни* = *after noon* is very common, as Russian has no single word for *afternoon*, e. g.

*at 4 p.m.* = *въ 4 ч. по-полудни*

*in the afternoon* = (1) *по-полудни*

(2) *днёмъ* (inst. of *день*)

*полночь* = *midnight*

Gen. *полуночи.*

N.B. *half-a-day* = *полднѣ*

*half-a-night* = *полночи*

*daily* (adj.) = *ежедневный*

(adv.) = *ежедневно.*

The days of the week are :

*Воскресѣніе* = *Sunday* (lit. = *resurrection*)

*понедѣльникъ* = *Monday* (= *after the holiday*)

*вторникъ* = *Tuesday* (cf. *второй*)

*среда* = *Wednesday* (= *centre*)

*четвергъ* = *Thursday* (cf. *четвёртый*)

*пятница* = *Friday* (cf. *пятый*)

*суббота* = *Saturday* (= *Sabbath*).

*on Sunday* = *въ Воскресѣніе*

*on Monday* = *въ понедѣльникъ*

N.B. *on Tuesday* = *во вторникъ*

*on Wednesday* = *въ среду*

*on Thursday* = *въ четвергъ*

*on Friday* = *въ пятницу*

*on Saturday* = *въ субботу*

*on Sundays* = *по Воскресѣніямъ, &c.*

<i>week</i>	= недѣля
<i>fortnight</i>	= двѣ недѣли
<i>this week</i>	= эту недѣлю
<i>every week</i>	= каждую недѣлю
<i>for a week</i>	= на недѣлю
<i>weekly</i>	= еженедѣльный.

Notice the idiom :

ту недѣлю	=	<i>next week</i> or <i>last week</i> (lit. <i>that week</i> )
на той недѣлѣ	=	„ „ (sc. <i>in</i> or <i>during</i> . . .).

The months are :

январь	= <i>January</i>	іюль	= <i>July</i>
февраль	= <i>February</i>	августъ	= <i>August</i>
мартъ	= <i>March</i>	сентябрь	= <i>September</i>
апрѣль	= <i>April</i>	октябрь	= <i>October</i>
маі	= <i>May</i>	ноябрь	= <i>November</i>
іюнь	= <i>June</i>	декабрь	= <i>December</i>

they are all masculine.

*in January* = въ январѣ

*in May* = въ маѣ.

In the words for the first two and the last four months the accent is always on the ending, in the others it remains throughout where it is in the nominative.

<i>Month</i>	= мѣсяцъ
<i>monthly</i>	= ежемѣсячный
<i>the date</i>	= число
<i>Jan. 1st</i>	= первое январі (sc. <i>число</i> )
<i>on Feb. 2nd</i>	= второго февралі (sc. <i>числа</i> )
<i>on March 3rd</i>	= третьяго марта
<i>of the fifth of April</i> (c. g. letter)	= отъ пятаго апрѣля
<i>on May 21st</i>	= двѣдцать-перваго маія
<i>on June 30th</i>	= тридцатаго іюня
<i>on July 31st</i>	= тридцать-перваго іюля
<i>what date is it to-day ?</i>	= какое (отъ которое) сегодня число ?
<i>year</i>	= годъ
<i>half-year</i>	= полгода
<i>two years</i>	= два года
<i>three years</i>	= три года
<i>four years</i>	= четыре года

but <i>five years</i>	= пять лѣтъ (lit. = <i>summers</i> )
<i>six years</i>	= шесть лѣтъ
till <i>twenty-one years</i>	= двадцать-одинъ годъ
<i>twenty-two years</i>	= двадцать-два года
<i>twenty-five years</i>	= двадцать-пять лѣтъ
&c.	
how old are you?	= сколько вамъ лѣтъ?
<i>twenty-three</i>	= двадцать-три года
<i>this year</i>	= въ этомъ году
<i>last year</i>	= въ прошломъ году
<i>last year's</i>	= прошлогóдный
<i>next year</i>	= въ будущемъ году
<i>in the year 1899</i>	= въ тысяча восемь сотъ девяносто дѣвятóмъ году (i. e. only the last numeral is an ordinal)
<i>in the year 1914</i>	= въ (тысяча) дѣвять сотъ четыр- надцатóмъ году
<i>of the year 1900</i>	= тысяча дѣвять сотаго года
<i>the twenties</i>	= двадцатые годы
<i>of the thirties</i>	= тридцатыхъ годовъ
<i>in the forties</i>	= въ сороковыхъ годахъ

(but only of historical periods, not of personal age)

century = (1) вѣкъ  
(2) столѣтíе.

*Ago* is expressed in two ways: (1) by за with the acc., e. g.

за два года = *two years ago*

or (2) by томý назадъ (= *to it back*), e. g.

пять лѣтъ томý назадъ = *five years ago*

*in a year's time* = черезъ годъ

*every other year* = (1) черезъ годъ

(2) каждыя два года

*every year* = каждый годъ

*yearly* = ежегодный

Время

= *Time*

со временемъ

= *in time, gradually*

время отъ времени

= *from time to time*

во время (+ gen.)

= *during*

во-время

= *in time (sc. punctually)*



пора́	= <i>it is time</i>
пора́ми	= <i>at times</i>
поро́й	= „
съ та́хъ поръ	= <i>from that time on</i>
до та́хъ поръ	= <i>till then</i>
до сихъ поръ	= <i>till now</i>
съ какихъ поръ ?	= <i>since when ?</i>
but въ-по́ру	= <i>it fits (of clothes, &amp;c.)</i>
не въ-по́ру	= <i>it does not fit.</i>

§ 69. Expression of money-values.

Полта́нникъ	= $\frac{1}{2}$ -rouble (= 50 kopeks)
ру́бль	= <i>a rouble</i> (= 1s. 11d.)
полтора́ рублі́	= $1\frac{1}{2}$ rouble
два рублі́	= 2 roubles
два съ полта́ной	= $2\frac{1}{2}$ roubles
пять рублѣ́й	= 5 roubles
пять съ полта́ной	= $5\frac{1}{2}$ roubles
копѣ́йка	= <i>a kopek</i> (= $\frac{1}{4}$ d.) <sup>1</sup>
два́ копѣ́йки	= 2 kopeks
пять копѣ́екъ	= 5 kopeks

60 kopeks = *шестьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ*

огъ ше́сть гри́вень

70 „ = *се́мьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ*

огъ се́мь гри́вень

80 „ = *во́семьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ*

огъ во́семь гри́вень.

The following are the colloquial names of the current coins and notes:

пята́к	= 5 kopeks (copper)
пятачо́къ	= „ (nickel)
гри́венникъ	= 10 „ „
пятиалта́нный	= 15 „ (nickel ; алта́нь = 3 kopeks)
двугри́венникъ	= 20 „ „
полта́на	= 50 „ (silver)
цѣ́лковый } (огъ рубль)	= 1 rouble „

<sup>1</sup> Also spelt копѣ́йка, gen. pl. копѣ́екъ.

трѣхрублёвая бума́жка	= 3-rouble note
пятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 5-rouble note
ог синенькая ( <i>little blue</i> )	
десятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 10 " "
ог красенькая ( <i>little red</i> )	
двадцатипятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 25 " "
стору́блёвая бума́жка	} = 100 " "
ог ра́дужная ( <i>rainbow</i> )	
о́днокопѣчная ма́рка	= a 1-kopek stamp
двух— " "	= a 2-kopek " "
трѣх— " "	= a 3-kopek " "
четырёх— " "	= a 4-kopek " "
семѣ— " "	= a 7-kopek " "
десяти— " "	= a 10-kopek " "

The preposition *по* followed by a numeral = *at . . .*; the numerals are in the dat., or acc., cf. § 61:

двѣ ма́рки по о́дной копѣ́йкѣ	= two 1-kopek stamps
пять ма́рокъ по-двѣ копѣ́йки	= five 2-kopek " "
десять ма́рокъ по-семѣ копѣ́екъ	= ten 7-kopek " "
(огдесять семѣкопѣчныхъ ма́рокъ, &c.).	

The question *at what price?* is expressed by the idiom *по-чѣмъ?* e. g.

по-чѣмъ э́ти галсту́ки? = *at what price* (sc. *how much*) (*are*) *these neckties?*

по-два ру́бли = *two roubles each*

по-пяти ру́блей = *five roubles each*.

For the use of the preposition *въ* with similar meaning cf. § 65.

## THE ADVERB

§ 70. The adverb is generally the same as the nominative singular neuter of the predicative adjective, e. g.

ми́лый	ми́лая	ми́лое	= nice; attributive form
ми́лѣ	ми́ла	ми́ло	= „ predicative form
		ми́ло	= nicely
хоро́шій	хоро́шая	хоро́шее	= good, nice

хоро́шь хороша́ хорошо́ = *good, nice*  
 хорошо́ = *well; all right.*

Similarly: пло́хо = *badly*  
 дурно́ = „  
 скве́рно = „  
 нехорошо́ = „ &c.

Soft adjectives form the adverb with -e instead of -o, e. g.

кра́йний = *extreme*                      кра́йне = *extremely*  
 и́скренний = *sincere*                    и́скренне = *sincerely*

but many of them take -o like the hard adjectives, e. g.

ра́нный = *early*                          рано́ = *early (adv.)*  
 по́здний = *late*                            поздно́ = *late (adv.)*  
 да́вный = *former*                          давно́ = *long ago*

и́скренний also makes и́скренно.

Owing to the fact that the present tense of the verb *to be* is almost quite obsolete in Russian, the adverb is very frequently used as an impersonal verb forming a sentence by itself, e. g.

ра́но = *it is early (often = too early)*

по́здно = *it is late (often = too late)*

жа́рко = *it is hot*

те́пло = *it is warm*

близко́ = *it is near*

высоко́ = *it is high*

хорошо́, что вы пришли́ = *it is well (or nice) that you have come*

возмо́жно, что онъ приде́тъ = *it is possible, that he will come*

невозмо́жно, чтобы онъ пришёлъ = *it is impossible, that he should come.*

Several adverbs can be accented in two ways, each equally correct, e. g.

те́мно or те́мно = *it is dark*

хо́лодно or хо́лодно = *it is cold*

да́леко or да́леко = *it is far*

глубо́ко or глубо́ко = *it is deep (also = deeply figuratively).*

Adjectives in -ский form the adverb by changing -ский into -ски, e. g.

и́ронический = *ironical*

и́ронически = *ironically*

similarly : поэтически = *poetically*  
 дружески = *in a friendly way, warmly*  
 хронически = *chronically, &c.*

The preposition *по-* prefixed to such adverbs gives the meaning *in the manner of*:

по-приятельски = *in a friendly way*  
 по-московски = *in Moscow fashion*

and if the adverb is one formed from the name of a nationality it can also mean *in . . .*, e. g.

по-руски = *in Russian*  
 по-английски = *in English*  
 по-нѣмецки = *in German*  
 по-французски = *in French*

e. g. я умѣю по-руски or я говорю по-руски = *I can (sc. talk) Russian, or I talk Russian*

я не понимаю по-нѣмецки = *I don't understand German.*

Notice the idiom :

что по-каковски ? = *in what language is that ?*

Otherwise adverbial expressions with *по-* are formed by using the dative singular of the adjective or pronoun, e. g.

по-новому = *in modern fashion*  
 по-старому = *in old fashion*  
 по-своему = *in one's own way*  
 по-моему = *in my own way or in my opinion*  
 по-вашему = *in your way or in your opinion*  
 по-военному = *in military fashion.*

Cf. also § 73.

## § 71.

### Adverbs of Place.

здѣсь	}	= <i>here</i>
тутъ <sup>1</sup>		
тамъ		= <i>there</i>
вездѣ	}	= <i>everywhere</i>
(по)всюду <sup>1</sup>		
гдѣ		= <i>where</i>
нигдѣ		= <i>nowhere</i>

<sup>1</sup> Rather colloquial than literary.

е. г. нигдѣ нѣтъ мѣста = *there is no place (or room) anywhere*

нигдѣ никого нѣтъ = *there is no one anywhere*

нѣгдѣ = *there is nowhere to . . .*

е. г. нѣгдѣ сѣсть = *there is no place to sit down*

гдѣ-то = *somewhere, in a certain place* (sc. *I don't remember where,*

*I don't know where, or I don't wish to say where*)

е. г. онъ гдѣ-то въ Россіи = *he is somewhere in Russia*

гдѣ-нибудь = *somewhere, anywhere*

е. г. онъ проведѣтъ зиму гдѣ-нибудь за-границей = *he will spend the winter somewhere abroad*

гдѣ-бы то нѣ было = *wherever you like*

тамъ и сямъ = *here and there.*

The adverbs *hither*, &c., are far more frequently used in Russian than in English; in English we say *I am going there*, but in Russian always *I am going thither*; in English *where have you put my book?* but in Russian *whither*, &c.; in English *where did you get that hat?* but in Russian *whence*, &c.

сюда = *hither*

е. г. пойдѣ сюда = *come here*

туда = *thither*

е. г. я идѣ туда = *I am going there*

куда = *whither*

е. г. куда вы положили мою книгу? = *where have you put my book?*

никуда = *nowhither*

е. г. я никуда не идѣ = *I am not going anywhere*

нѣкуда = *there is no place whither*

е. г. нѣкуда итти = *there is nowhere to go to*

куда-то = *somewhither*

е. г. онъ куда-то ушѣлъ = *he has gone off somewhere*

куда-нибудь = *somewhither*

е. г. пойдѣмъ куда-нибудь = *let's go somewhere (anywhere)*

куда-бы то нѣ было = *whithersoever* #

отсюда = *hence*

е. г. отсюда до Москвы далекѣ = *from here to Moscow it is far*

оттуда = *thence*

е. г. оттуда до насъ пять вѣрстъ = *it is five versts from there to us*

откуда = *whence*е. г. вы откуда? = *where do you come from?*откуда-то = *somewhence*откуда-нибудь = *somewhence*е. г. достаньте откуда-нибудь = *get from somewhere (no matter where)*откуда-бы то нибыло = *whencesoever*.Notice the following very idiomatic uses of *гдѣ* and *куда*, е. г.*гдѣ* мнѣ это сдѣлать! = *I shall never be able to do that!**гдѣ* вамъ! = *how can you think of it!*этотъ городъ куда больше того = *this town is ever so much bigger than that*это вино хоть куда = *this wine is simply splendid**гдѣ* . . . , *гдѣ* . . . = *in one place . . . , in another . . .*Notice: *наверху* = *up above*, *вс.* *upstairs**внизу* = *down below*, *вс.* *downstairs**вверхъ* = *up(wards)**внизъ* = *down(wards)**снаружи* = *outside, outwardly**внутри* = *inside, inwardly*.

## § 72.

## Adverbs of Time.

*теперь* = *now**тогда* = *then**всегда* = *always**когда* = *when**никогда* = *never*е. г. *никогда* не ѣмъ мяса = *I never eat meat**нѣкогда* = *there is no time to . . .*е. г. мнѣ теперь *нѣкогда*! = *I've no time for that now!**нѣкогда* = *formerly, sometime**иногда* = *at times, sometimes**когда-то* = *formerly, a long time ago (вс. I don't remember exactly when)*е. г. онъ *когда-то* былъ женатъ = *he was married once (вс. his wife is now dead or has disappeared)**когда-нибудь* = *some time*е. г. загляните къ намъ *когда-нибудь*! = *look us up some time or other*

когда-бы то ни было	= whenever you like
сначала	= at first
наконѣцъ	= at last
ужѣ	= already
нѣтъ ещё } ещѣ не }	= not yet
ужѣ нѣтъ, ужѣ не	= no longer

e. g. о́гѣ ужѣ нѣтъ здѣсь = *he is already gone, he is no longer here*

наконѣцъ	= at last
ужѣ, потѣмъ	= later on
скѣро	= soon, quickly
сно́ва, о́пять	= again
по-скѣрѣе	= as quickly as possible, hurry up!
дѣлго	= a long time
онъ дѣлго не идѣтъ	= he is a long time in coming
давнѣ	} = long ago, long since
давнѣмъ-давнѣ	
сей-часъ } тѣтъ-часъ } сѣю мину́ту }	= immediately
трѣтъяго дня	= the day before yesterday
вчера	= yesterday
сего́дня	= to-day
завтра	= to-morrow
пѣслѣ-завтра	= the day after to-morrow.

## § 73.

## Adverbs of Manner.

такъ	= thus
какъ	= how, as, like
никакъ	= (1) in no wise, by no means

e. g. никакъ нѣтъ = *not at all*

никакъ нѣльзя = *it is quite out of the question,*

as an interrogative conjunction :

= (2) perhaps, as likely as not

никакъ онъ придѣтъ = *perhaps he will come.*

The following also is used more as an interrogative conjunction :

некакъ = *I expect, as likely as not*

некакъ ѣдутъ = *I think they're coming*

некакъ приходилъ кто-то ? = *has any one been ?*

какъ-то = *somehow, sort of, somehow or other*

e. g. мнѣ какъ-то не хочется = *somehow or other (I can't explain why) I don't want to*

это странно какъ-то = *it's queer somehow*

какъ-то can also mean *for instance*, and is used as an alternative for the expression какъ напริมѣръ = *as for example* ;

какъ-нибудь = *somehow or other, by hook or by crook*

e. g. устройте это какъ-нибудь = *arrange this (matter) by some means or other*

приѣзжайте къ намъ какъ-нибудь лѣтомъ = *come and see us in the summer if you possibly can*

это надо сдѣлать какъ-нибудь = *(we) must do this somehow or other*

какъ-бы то нибыло = *however that may be*

иначе (or иначе) = *otherwise, differently*

это надо устроить иначе = *this must be arranged differently*

учись хорошенько, иначе тебѣ накажутъ = *learn your lesson well, otherwise they'll punish you*

не такъ = *differently*, but very often sc. *wrong* (adv.) ; although there is a word for *incorrectly*, viz. неправильно, the most common way of saying *wrong* is не такъ, e. g.

вы не такъ сдѣлали = *you have done it wrong*

онъ не такъ поѣхалъ = *he has taken the wrong road*

вы не такъ сказали = *you have said it wrong*

я не такъ понялъ его = *I misunderstood him*

though of course the same expression is often used to mean *not thus* literally.

Notice the very common adverbs :

вдругъ = *suddenly*

постепенно } = *gradually*

мало-по-малу }

напрасно = *in vain* (often sc. *it is a pity that*)

нарочно = *on purpose*

нечаянно = *unintentionally*

случайно = *accidentally*

особенно = *especially*

вообще = *in general*

именно = *namely*

дѣйствительно = *actually, in very fact, indeed*

конечно = *of course*

навѣрно = *surely, certainly*

слѣдовательно = *consequently*

непремѣнно = *without fail*

безпрестанно = *incessantly*



## ADVERBS OF MANNER, DEGREE, AND QUANTITY 111

включительно = <i>inclusively</i>	обыкновенно = <i>usually</i>
исключительно = <i>exclusively</i>	необыкновенно } = <i>unusually, un-</i>
безусловно = <i>absolutely</i>	чрезвычайно } <i>commonly</i>

and the idioms :

такъ и сякъ = *this way and that*

ни такъ ни сякъ = *neither this way nor that*

такъ себѣ = *so-so, fairly, middling*

ничего = „ „ „

такъ = *gratis, for nothing, for fun*

я это только такъ сказать = *I didn't mean it*

такъ точно = *just so* (often used by servants = *yes*)

точно такъ = *just like that*

точно = (1) *it is just as if*

онъ точно въ неѣ влюблёнъ = *one would think he was in love with her*

= (2) *really, truly, exactly*

у меня собака точно такія = *I've got a dog just like that*

ровно = *exactly*

ровно въ два часа = *exactly at two o'clock.*

Cf. also § 70.

Note on the use of *to* after adverbs of place, time, and manner.

It should be mentioned that *to* is often used enclitically after interrogative adverbs, not to express indefiniteness, but merely as an expletive, as much as to say, *I wonder*, e. g.

гдѣ-то они теперь! = *I wonder where they are now!*

когда-то мы увидимся! = *I wonder when we shall meet again!*

какъ-то онъ устроится! = *I wonder how he'll settle his affairs!*

After definitive adverbs its use implies surprise, e. g.

теперь-то я понимаю! = *now I understand!*

такъ-то вы поняли меня! = *is it thus that you understood me!* (i. e. *thought what I meant*).

### § 74. Adverbs of Degree and Quantity.

много = *much*

немного

dimin. немножко } = *little*

мало

e. g. дайте мнѣ немного вина (gen.) = *give me a little wine*

ещѣ немножко? = *a little more?*

это мало! = *that's little* (sc. *too little*)!

это много! = *that's much* (sc. *too much*)!

въ этой книгѣ мало хорошаго = *in this book there's but little good*

у меня немного денегъ = *I have a little money* (with emphasis on денегъ)

у меня немного денегъ }  
у меня денегъ немного } = *I have but little money*  
у меня мало денегъ }  
(with emphasis on немного)

(for the declension of the plural *много*, &c., cf. § 54, obs. 9),

сколько = *as much, how much*

сколько это стоитъ? = *how much does this cost?*

я помогаю ему, сколько могу = *I help him as much, as I can*

только = *so much*

онъ быть столько разъ у меня, что наконецъ онъ мнѣ надоѣлъ =  
*he has been so many times to see me, that at last I've got sick of him*

сколько головъ, столько умовъ = *so many heads, so many minds*

только = *only*

не только = *not only*.

Notice the idioms:

да и только }  
только и всего } = *and that's all*

не хочу, да и только = *I don't want to, and that's all about it*

нисколько = *not in the least* (always with the negative repeated)

я нисколько не хочу = *I don't want to in the least*

сколько-нибудь = *at all*

если онъ сколько-нибудь порядочный человекъ = *if he is at all a decent fellow*

несколько = *some, a few, somewhat*

несколько разъ = *several times*

„ рублей = *a few roubles*

у него несколько дѣтей = *he has several children*

эта шляпа несколько дороже = *this hat is rather dearer*

гораздо = *ever so much*

это изданіе гораздо дешевле = *this edition is ever so much cheaper*

довольно }  
достаточно } = *enough, fairly*

довольно денегъ = *enough money*

ДОВОЛЬНО ХОЛОДНО = *it is fairly cold.*

(N.B. *not enough* is usually expressed by *мало*, e.g. *мало денег* = *not enough money*)

**больше = more**

у него́ больше́ книгъ, чѣмъ у меня́ = *he has more books than I*

больше всего = *most of all*

по-бóльше = *a good lot, rather more*

да́йте мнѣ по-бо́льше (+ gen.) = *give me a good lot of . . .*

**меньше** (with gen.) = *less*

**мѣньше всего** = *least of all*

по-мѣньше (with gen.) = *as little as possible*

скорѣе = *rather* (sc. sooner)

я скорѣ дамъ вамъ, чѣмъ ему = *I would rather give (lit. shall give) it to you than to him*

слишкомъ } = too, excessively  
черезчуръ }

это слишком много = *that is too much*

ЭТО СЛИШКОМЪ МАЛО = *that is too little*

(N.B. *never* with *непóго*)

слишкомъ = *more than, above* (lit. = *with excess*)

ему слишкомъ сорокъ лѣтъ = *he is over forty*

**очень** = *very, very much*

весьма́ = *very, quite*

ОНА́ ОЧЕНЬ МИЛА́ = *she is very nice*

я её очень люблю = *I like her very much*

я́ очень хочу́ = *I want to very much*

у него́ очень {много} {мало} денегъ = he has {a great deal of} {very little} money

(N.B. *never* with **немного**)

**ВОБЩЕ НЕ = not in the least**

я вóвсе не хочú = *I don't in the least want to*

почти (что) = *almost*

ΠΟΤΗ ΤΕΜΝΟ = *it is nearly dark*:

я почти что упалъ = *I nearly fell down*

далекó не } = far from, not nearly, not at all  
совсѣмъ не }

онъ далеко не богатый человекъ = *he is far from being a rich man*

я совсѣмъ не понимаю = *I don't understand at all*

совсѣмъ = *quite*

мнѣ совсѣмъ удобно = *I'm quite comfortable*

не совсѣмъ = *not quite*

вполнѣ, сполна, сплошь = *entirely*

едва, еле, еле-еле, чуть, чуть-чуть = *scarcely, with difficulty*

онъ едва умѣетъ писать = *he scarcely knows how to write*

она еле-еле ходитъ = *she walks with the greatest difficulty*

едва не, чуть не, чуть-чуть не = *almost*

меня едва не убили = *they almost killed me*

она чуть-чуть не упала = *she very nearly fell down*

(чуть-чуть alone means *the tiniest bit*)

по крайней мѣрѣ = *at least*.

### Note on the Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs.

The comparative of the adverb is exactly the same as the predicative comparative of the adjective, e. g.

лучше = *better* (adj. and adv.)

хуже = *worse* " " "

Specifically adverbial forms are :

болѣе = *more* } cf. §§ 57, 84.  
мѣнѣе = *less* }

Notice :

болѣе или мѣнѣе = *more or less*

ни болѣе ни мѣнѣе = *neither more nor less*

and the superlative forms :

наиболѣе = *(the) most* (adv.)

наимѣнѣе = *(the) least* (adv.)

всего мѣнѣе = *anything rather than*.

Comparatives preceded by *по-* are commonly used adverbially, e. g.

по-выше = *higher up* (sc. *a little higher*)

по-ниже = *lower down*

по-дальше = *further along*

по-ближе = *rather closer*

and cf. p. 87.

## PARTICLES AND CONJUNCTIONS

## § 75.

и = and ;

often used to emphasize the preceding word, or with the meaning *just, moreover*, e. g.

я такъ и думать! = *I thought as much!*

этого и недоставало = *it was just this that was wanting (= this is the last straw)*

въ томъ-то и дѣло = *that's just the point*

и и говори́лъ ему́ . . . = *moreover I had told him . . .*, followed by не = *not in the least*

я и не хотѣть = *I didn't in the least want to, or what's more I didn't want to.*

In some cases, when things are mentioned in couples, да = *and*,  
e. g. мужъ да жена = *husband and wife*.

It is important to notice that expressions such as *you and I* are always introduced by мы = *we*, e. g.

мы съ вами = *you and I*

мы съ нимъ = *he and I*

мы съ сестрой = *my sister and I*.

Any antithesis can be introduced by а, e. g.

онъ хочетъ, а я не хочу = *he wants to, but I don't (or and I don't)*.

It can usually be rendered by the English *but* or *while*, but very often it begins a sentence and corresponds to our *now* or *and*; it takes the place of и (= *and*) whenever any antithesis is to be indicated.

да }  
но } = *but*

this indicates stronger antithesis than а; still stronger are

одна́ко }  
одна́коже } = *nevertheless*

во́етакъ = *however, after all*

-таки can be added as an enclitic to words in the sentence, e. g.

онъ такъ постави́тъ на своёмъ = *he (sc. in spite of everything) would have his own way*

или = *or*

вѣдь = *for, for you know that*

usually used as an expostulation at the beginning of a sentence, e. g.

вѣдь вы знали, что я не хочу = *now look here, you knew that I didn't want to*

и — и — = *both — and —*

ни — ни — = *neither — nor —*

какъ — такъ и — = *both — and —*

или — или — = *either — or —*

итакъ = *and so*

(usually used in drawing an inference)

также } = *also*  
тоже }

даже = *even*

ещѣ = *still*

вотъ = *this is . . . , here is . . . , there is . . .*  
(like French *voici, voilà*).

### § 76. Questions and Answers (cf. § 49).

These are introduced either by some interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by the use of the interrogative particle *-ли*, e. g.

кто вы? = *who are you?*

вы-ли это? = *is this you?*

дома-ли баринъ? = *is the gentleman at home?*

In ordinary conversation the *-ли* is often omitted, the question being indicated by raising the voice at the end of the sentence. Что is often used at the beginning of a question instead of *-ли*, e. g.

что мы поѣдемъ? = *shall we go?*

This same question could be put in the following ways:

а что, мы поѣдемъ?

поѣдемъ, что-ли?

If a negative answer is expected *развѣ* is very often used, e. g.

развѣ вы знаете его? = *you don't know him, do you?*

If an affirmative answer is expected, use *развѣ* не, e. g.

развѣ вы меня не узнали? = *didn't you recognize me?*

развѣ вы не хотите? = *do you mean to say you don't want to?*

*Incredulity and amazement* are expressed by *неужели*, e. g.

*неужели́ это правда!* = *can this possibly be true!*

*Doubt* by *врядъ-ли*

*врядъ-ли это такъ* = *I doubt whether this is so.*

*-ли — или —* = *whether — or —*

*я не знаю, умеръ-ли или нѣтъ* = *I don't know whether he is dead or not.*

The affirmative answer is

*да* = *yes*, and the negative *нѣтъ* = *no*,

ut as often as not a question can be answered by repeating a word contained in the question, e. g.

*знаете-ли вы его?* — *знаю* — = *do you know him?* — *yes, I do.*

*дома-ли ба́рыня?* — *дома* = *is the lady at home?* — *yes.*

Other common expressions are:

*конечно* = *of course*

*ещё-бы!* = *I should say so!*

## § 77.

## Negations.

In negative sentences the negative particle *не* always comes immediately before the verb if the whole sentence is negated, ut before any particular word if that word only is negated, e. g.

*я не люблю его* = *I don't like him*

*я люблю не его, а еѳ* = *I like her, not him.*

The object, when directly governed by the negative, is always in the genitive, e. g.

*онъ не любитъ своей жены* = *he doesn't love his wife*

but cf. § 81).

If a sentence contains any negative pronoun, adverb, or the conjunction *ни — ни —*, the negative particle *не* must be added; wo negatives in Russian do not make an affirmative, e. g.

*никого́ не ви́жу* = *I can see no one*

*ничего́ не хо́чу* = *I don't want anything*

*я никакъ не ожида́ль* — = *I didn't in the least expect —*

*There is not* = *нѣтъ*

which always requires the genitive, e. g.

*нѣтъ наде́жды* = *there is no hope*

*дома́ никого́ нѣтъ* = *there is nobody at home*

*Is there not?* = *нѣтъ-ли?*

## § 78. Subordinative Conjunctions.

чтобы = *in order that*чтобы не = *lest*если = *if*хотя = *although*когда = *when*пока = *while*

&amp;c.

(for the use of these cf. §§ 102-5)

(какъ) будто	} = <i>as it were, as though ;</i>
будто-бы	
яко-бы	

these are very commonly used in reporting facts, incidents, or speeches of doubtful authenticity or credibility, e. g.

онъ какъ будто не хочетъ = *I fancy he doesn't want to*онъ говорить будто не хочетъ = *he makes out he doesn't want to*она будто-бы нездорова = *she is supposed to be unwell.*

Other particles used colloquially are

авось = *may be*небось = *I expect*

мочь	} = <i>says he, said he</i> (in quoting another's words)
дѣкать	

which are all very commonly used by the people, but not much in society or literature.

The particle *-сь* is often affixed to the last word of any sentence, especially by servants and shopkeepers and subordinate officials when addressing employers, customers, or superiors, to indicate subservience; it is supposed to be an abbreviation of the words *сударь* = *sir* and *сударыня* = *madam*.

## THE PREPOSITIONS AND THE USE OF THE CASES WITH AND WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

## § 79. Alphabetical list of prepositions :

безъ (безо)	= <i>without</i>	Gen.
близъ (близь)	= <i>near</i>	Gen.
вдоль	= <i>down</i>	Gen.
вмѣсто	= <i>instead of</i>	Gen.
внутри	= <i>inside</i>	Gen.



внѣ	= <i>outside</i>	Gen.
возлѣ	= <i>alongside</i>	Gen.
вokrýгъ	= <i>around</i>	Gen.
вопрекѣ	= <i>against</i>	Dat.
въ (во)	= <i>in, into</i>	Acc. Loc.
для	= <i>for</i>	Gen.
до	= <i>up to</i>	Gen.
за	= <i>for, behind</i>	Acc. Inst.
изъ	= <i>out of</i>	Gen.
изъ-за	= <i>from out, from behind, because of</i>	Gen.
изъ-подъ	= <i>from under</i>	Gen.
крóмѣ	= <i>besides, except</i>	Gen.
кругóмъ	= <i>around</i>	Gen.
къ (ко)	= <i>to</i>	Dat.
мѣжду	= <i>between</i>	Gen. Inst.
мѣмо	= <i>past</i>	Gen.
на	= <i>on, on to</i>	Acc. Loc.
надъ (надо)	= <i>above</i>	Inst.
о (объ, обо)	= <i>about, against</i>	Acc. Loc.
около	= <i>around, about, near</i>	Gen.
отъ (ото)	= <i>away from</i>	Gen.
пѣредъ (передо, предъ, предо)	= <i>in front of</i>	Acc. Inst.
по	= <i>according to, along, till</i>	Acc. Dat. Loc.
пóдлѣ	= <i>alongside of</i>	Gen.
позадѣ (позáдъ)	= <i>behind</i>	Gen.
посредѣ	= <i>in the midst of</i>	Gen.
пóслѣ	= <i>after</i>	Gen.
подъ (подо)	= <i>under</i>	Acc. Inst.
при	= <i>in the presence of, at, near</i>	Loc.
про	= <i>about</i>	Acc.
прóтивъ	= <i>against</i>	Gen.
рáди	= <i>for the sake of</i>	Gen.
сверхъ	= <i>over</i>	Gen.
сквозъ	= <i>through</i>	Acc.
средѣ	= <i>in the midst of</i>	Gen.
съ (со)	= <i>with, from</i>	Acc. Gen. Inst.
у	= <i>at the house of, near, in the possession of</i>	Gen.
чѣрезъ, чрезъ	= <i>through, across, over</i>	Acc.

## § 80.

## The Nominative.

The nominative is used, as in other languages, for the subject and the predicate of the sentence, e. g.

я твой отецъ = *I [am] thy father*

though under certain conditions the predicate is in the instrumental, cf. § 84.

The nominative is used for the vocative, except in the three instances mentioned in § 39, e. g.

отецъ мой! = *oh, my father!*

за + nom.

The nominative is always used after the preposition за = *for* in phrases such as :

что это за книга? = *what book is that? what sort of a book is that?* (lit. = *what this for book*). Cf. German : *was ist das für ein Buch?*

though when the nom. is the same as the acc. it is not apparent that it is the nom., e. g.

что это за домъ? = *what house is that?*

## § 81.

## The Genitive.

The genitive is used to denote :

- (1) Possession, e. g.

домъ отца = *the house of the father*

though in this sense it is often replaced by the possessive adj., q. v.

- (2) Qualities, e. g.

мальчикъ хорошаго характера = *a boy of good character*

человѣкъ пожилыхъ лѣтъ = *a man of advanced years.*

- (3) Partition, e. g.

я хотѣ воды = *I want (some) water*

хлѣба, пожалуйста! = *(some) bread, please!*

кусокъ мяса = *a piece of meat*

often with the meaning of *a lot* after impersonal verbs :

накопилось писемъ = *(a lot) of letters has accumulated.*

- (4) Quantity, e. g.

стаканъ чаю = *a glass of tea* (tea in Russia is usually drunk out of glasses)

фунтъ сахара = *a pound of sugar*

масса людей = *a mass (crowd) of people*

after adverbs of quantity, e. g.

много дѣтей = *many children*

мало друзей = *few friends*

немного (dim. немножко) мяса = *a little meat*

нѣсколько лѣтъ = *some years*

for the gen. in -y cf. § 39; for the other adverbs of quantity, and also for their adjectival forms and use, cf. § 74.

(5) After the numerals 5-20, 25-30, 35-40, &c., cf. § 63.

(6) Time in certain expressions :

сегодня = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*)

перваго марта = *on the first of March* (= *of the first*).

(7) Comparison :

онъ слабѣ меня = *he [is] weaker than I*.

(8) The genitive is always used after certain verbs :

бояться } = *to fear*  
опасаться }

избѣгать = *to avoid*

желать = *to wish* (when an indefinite quantity is implied)

хотѣть = *to desire* ( " " " )

искать = *to seek*

просить = *to beg*

ждать } = *to await, expect*  
дожидаться }

стоить = *to cost* (except in quotations of prices)

лишать = *to deprive*

касаться = *to touch, concern*

держаться = *to keep to*.

Examples :

я боюсь моря = *I am afraid of the sea*

хотите-ли вы вина = *would you like some wine?* but я хочу

эту книгу (= acc.) = *I want this book*

желаю вамъ счастливаго пути! = *I wish you a good journey!*

(желаю вамъ) всего хорошаго (лучшаго)! (*I wish you*) *everything good (best)*! (A very common phrase on saying good-bye or ending a letter.)

я ищу квартиры = *I am looking for a flat*

жду вашего приезда = *I am awaiting your arrival*

стоило его жизни = *it cost his life* (but in prices the nom. is used)

это касается васъ = *this concerns you*

что касается меня = *as far as I am concerned*

notice the idiom :

милости просимъ! = *please come and see us* (lit. = *we crave mercy*, a very common form of general invitation).

(9) After certain adjectives in the shorter or attributive form :

полонъ = *full*

вагонъ полонъ людей = *the railway-carriage is full of people*

достойнъ = *worthy*

она достойна его = *she is worthy of him.*

(10) In negative sentences the direct object is always in the genitive, e. g.

я не вижу вашего дома = *I do not (= cannot) see your house*

онъ не слышитъ моего голоса = *he does not hear my voice*

я не знаю вашей сестры = *I don't know your sister.*

One meets with apparent exceptions to this rule, when the object is not directly governed by the negative, but they are only apparent, e. g.

я не могу читать эту книгу = *I cannot read this book*

but

я не читалъ этой книги = *I have not read this book.*

The genitive is also used after

нѣтъ = *there is not* (il n'y a pas)

не будетъ = *there will not be*

не-было = *there was not*

у меня нѣтъ денегъ = *I have no money* (lit. = *to me there is no money*)

сегодня не будетъ представлѣнія = *to-day there will be no performance*

не будетъ дождя = *there will be no rain*

не-было ничего = *there was nothing*

не-было мороза = *there was no frost.*

(11) The genitive is used instead of the accusative in the singular and plural of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -л, -нъ, and

in the plural of feminine nouns ending in -а, -и when they denote things that are or were animate, e. g.

я вижу солдата = *I see a soldier*

онъ знаетъ царя = *he knows the tsar*

я люблю собакъ = *I am fond of dogs*

The old accusative which was the same as the nominative is used in a few phrases which became crystallized before the introduction of this use of the genitive. Cf. § 83.

(12) Notice the idioms:

дома = *at home*

мало того что . . . = *far from . . .*

The genitive is used after the following prepositions:

безъ = *without*

безъ меня = *without me, in my absence*

безо всего = *without anything*

notice безъ того, чтобы не сказать вамъ = *without telling you*

до = *up to, till, before*

до того = *to that* (sc. *extent*, = *to such an extent*)

до того времени = *up to that time*

до сихъ поръ = *till now* (cf. § 68)

до конца = *up to the end* (конецъ = *end*)

до рождества Христова = *before the birth of Christ*

до васъ = *before your time, before your arrival*

notice the idioms:

мнѣ не до этого = *I have no time* (or *no inclination*) *for this*  
(sc. *now*)

намъ не до насъ = *they have nothing to do with us* (sc. *they don't bother themselves about us*)

до-сыта = *to one's full*

изъ (изо before certain groups of consonants) = *from out of, of*  
я получилъ письмо изъ Москвы = *I have received a letter from*  
*Moscow*

онъ пріѣхалъ изъ Англии = *he has arrived from England*

изъ воды = *from out of the water*

изъ золота = *of gold*

изъ стекла = *of glass*

изъ дня въ день = *from day to day*

it is always used in the phrase *one of*, e. g.

въ одномъ изъ большихъ домовъ = *in one of the big houses* . . .

the gen. alone cannot be used in such cases ; notice the idiom :

изъ-дому = *from (out of) home*.

The two following compound prepositions also take the genitive :

изъ-за = *from behind, from beyond, from out of, on account of*

изъ-за границы = *from beyond the frontier, sc. from abroad*

изъ-за этого = *from out of this, sc. on account of, as a result of this*

изъ-за моей болѣзни = *on account of, as a result of my illness*

изъ-подъ = *from under*

изъ-подъ стола = *from under the table*.

у = *near, at the house of, in the possession of, from*.

As the verb *to have* (имѣть) is very seldom used in Russian, recourse has to be had to a paraphrase to express possession, temporary or permanent. This paraphrase consists of the preposition *у* followed by a noun or pronoun in the genitive and a part of the verb *to be* (быть) ; the part most commonly used is *есть* = *is*, *il y a*, though of course *будетъ* = *will be*, *il y aura*, and *было* = *was*, *il y avait*, *il y a eu* are also very frequent. It remains to be said that the word *есть* is as often as not omitted, so that as a result the commonest way of saying in Russian :

<i>I have</i>	is	у меня
<i>thou hast</i>	„	у тебя
<i>he or she has</i>	„	у него, у ней
<i>we have</i>	„	у насъ
<i>you have</i>	„	у васъ
<i>they have</i>	„	у нихъ

The full forms, with *есть* added each time after the pronoun, are especially common in relating stories or whenever it is necessary to be particularly explicit, and in questions.

Examples :

у меня есть отецъ и мать, и два брата = *I have a father and a mother and two brothers*

у нихъ много денегъ = *they have a lot of money*

у насъ нѣтъ дѣтей = *we have no children* (нѣтъ is a contraction of не + есть.)

есть у васъ эта книга? = *have you this book?*

у меня насморкъ = *I have a cold in the head*

у него простуда = *he has a cold in the chest*

notice the idioms:

у васъ хорошій видъ = *you look well* (lit. *you have a good aspect*)

у него плохой видъ = *he looks ill.*

If the word in the nominative comes before the preposition у and the word governed by it, it regains its original meaning of *near*, e. g.

собака у меня = *the dog is near me.*

The distinction is very subtle and must be closely observed, as it is one way of expressing the difference between the definite and the indefinite articles, e. g.

у меня *онъ* ) собака = *I have a dog*  
у меня *есть* )

while

собака у меня = *the dog is near me* (not necessarily *my dog*),  
i. e. *I have the dog, the dog is in my possession, or at my house.*

Again,

у царя автомобиль = *the tsar has a motor-car*

but

автомобиль у царя = *the motor-car is at present in the tsar's possession, the tsar has the motor-car (probably not his own).*

у of course often means *at the house of*, e. g.

они у насъ = *they [are] at our house*

у насъ сегодня балъ = *[there is] a dance at our house to-day*

я обѣдаю сегодня у друзей = *I am dining at the house of some friends to-day.*

With the personal pronoun it also acquires the meaning of a possessive adjective, e. g.

у меня зубъ болитъ = *my tooth aches, I have toothache*

домъ у насъ горитъ = *our house is burning*

головѣ у ней болитъ = *her head aches, she has a headache.*

In exclamatory remarks it acquires, coupled with the personal pronoun, something of the nature of the ethic dative, e. g.

она́ у меня́ хоро́шая ло́шадь! = *that's a fine horse!* (sc. of mine)

ты у меня́ краса́вица! = *thou art a beauty!* (not ironically, sc. *you are mine, you are beautiful, and I'm proud of you*)

она́ у васъ ѳмница! = *she's a clever-boots!* (sc. *your little girl*).

Curiously enough after certain verbs у can also mean *from*, e. g.

онъ отнять у меня́ де́ньги = *he took away the money from me*

я взять у него́ кнѳгу = *I took the (or a) book from him.*

съ (so before certain groups of consonants) = *from, since, from off*

съ головы́ до ногъ = *from head to foot* (lit. *feet*)

съ утра́ до ве́чера = *from morning till evening*

съ января́ = *since January*

съ пѳятаго ма́я = *from the 5th of May*

онъ упа́ть съ кры́ши = *he fell from the roof*

ско́лько съ васъ сня́ли? = *how much did they take off you?*  
(e. g. *in shops*, = the colloquial: *how much did they rook you?*)

съ меня́ сня́ли оче́нь доро́го = *they made me pay dear* (lit. *they took very dearly from me*)

со днѳ́ на де́нь = *from day to day*

со скѳ́ки = *from tedium*

съ отча́янія = *from despair*

съ ва́шего позво́ленія = *with your permission.*

Notice phrases such as :

сра́зу (also съ-ра́зу) = *at once*

я сра́зу узнáть его́ = *I immediately recognized him*

сно́ва = *again*

сѳ́зно́ва = *all over again*

снача́ла = *at first*

which are compound adverbs formed by the preposition съ with the genitive of nouns and adjectives.

отъ (ото before certain groups of consonants) = *from, away from*



онъ уѣхалъ отъ насъ = *he has gone away from us (sc. left us)*  
 я получилъ письмо отъ брата = *I have received a letter from*  
*(sc. my) brother*

отъ радости = *from joy*

отъ скуки = *from tedium*

отъ всего этого = *from (as a result of) all this*

онъ умеръ отъ этого = *he died from (of) this*

. . . . отъ двадцатаго мая = . . . . *of the 20th of May*

notice the idiom :

отъ роду = *from birth.*

Phrases are common in which both отъ and до are used :

отъ Петрограда до Москвы = *from Petrograd to Moscow*

отъ начала до конца = *from beginning to end*

отъ времени до времени = *from time to time.*

There are a number of prepositions which take the genitive which were originally adverbs (some are still used as such), or cases of nouns with or without other prepositions, and having become crystallized are regularly used as prepositions :

близъ = *near*

близъ Москвы = *near Moscow*

около = *around, about, near*

около Лондона = (1) *not far from London*, (2) *around London*

около двадцати лѣтъ = *about 20 years*

\*кругомъ }  
 \*вокругъ } = *round, around*

кругомъ города = *round the town*

побѣ }  
 \*возлѣ } = *alongside of*

возлѣ меня = *alongside of me*

побѣ рѣки = *alongside the river*

вдоль = *the length of, down*

вдоль улицы = *down the street*

внѣ = *outside*

внѣ комнаты = *outside the room*

\*внутри = *inside*

внутри комнаты = *inside the room*

вмѣсто = *instead of*

вмѣсто того = *instead of that*

сверхъ = *over*

сверхъ того = *in addition to that*

сверхъ шубы = *over (his) fur coat*

(сверхъестественный = *supernatural*)

среди (\*посредѣ) = *in the middle of*

среди улицъ = *in the middle of the street*

(Средиземное море = *the Mediterranean*)

\*позади = *behind*

позади меня = *behind me*

\*послѣ = *after*

послѣ обѣда = *after dinner*

\*мимо = *past*

мимо дома = *past the house* (cf. мимоходомъ = *in passing*)

для = *for*

для чего? = *what for?*

онъ сдѣлать это для меня = *he did this for me*

крѣмъ = *besides*

крѣмъ этого = *besides this*

крѣмъ того = *besides that*

ради = *for the sake of*

ради Бога! = *for God's sake*

прѣтивъ = *against, opposite*

прѣтивъ непріятеля = *against the enemy*

прѣтивъ холеры = *against cholera*

прѣтивъ насъ = (1) *against us*, (2) *opposite us*

между = *between* (but more commonly with the inst.).

Those marked with an asterisk can be used as adverbs as well.

§ 82. The Dative is used after a number of verbs without any preposition :

дать }  
давать } = *to give*

я дать ей деньги = *I gave her the money*

онъ дать мнѣ слово = *he gave me [his] word*

вѣрить = *to believe*

я вамъ вѣрю = *I believe you* (but N.B. вѣровать въ Бога  
= *to believe in God*)

удивляться = *to be astonished (at)*

я удивляюсь этому = *I am astonished at this*

радоваться = *to rejoice (at)*

мы радуемся вашему приѣзду = *we rejoice at your arrival*

кланяться = *to greet (lit. = to bow to)*

кланяюсь всемъ = *greetings to all*

учиться = *to learn*

я учусь русскому языку = *I am learning Russian*

смѣяться = *to laugh (at)*

чемъ вы смѣётесь? = *what are you laughing at?*

(N.B. *to laugh at some one* = с. надъ + inst.)

мѣшать = *to hinder*

я вамъ не мѣшаю? = *I am not in your way?*

молиться = *to pray to*

молюсь Богу = *I am praying to God*

завидовать = *to envy*

завидую вамъ = *I envy you*

жаловаться = *to complain*

онъ жалуется мнѣ на васъ = *he complains to me of you*

грозить = *to threaten*

грозить намъ бѣда = *misfortune is threatening us*

мстить = *to take vengeance on*

учить (+ acc. and dat.) = *to teach*

чемъ онъ васъ учитъ? = *what is he teaching you?*

говорить, сказать = *to tell*

скажете мнѣ = *tell me*

подражать = *to imitate*

напомянуть, напомнить = *to remind*

напомните мнѣ объ этомъ = *remind me about this*

это мнѣ напоминаетъ его = *this reminds me of him*

писать = *to write* (but also with къ, cf. p. 131)

я пишу ему письмо = *I am writing him a letter*

подарить = *to give, to present*; купить = *to buy*, and others.

Also after impersonal verbs:

это мнѣ нравится = *this pleases me*, sc. *I like this*

мнѣ хочется = *I want to*

мнѣ пить хочется = *I am thirsty* (= *I want to drink*. There is no adjective *thirsty* in Russian)

ка́жется = *it seems*

мнѣ́ кажется = *it seems to me, sc. I think*

мнѣ́ не спѣ́тся = *I cannot sleep*

мнѣ́ нездо́ровится = *I am unwell.*

Notice the curious expression :

онѣ́ прихóдится мнѣ́ (e.g.) дяде́й (inst.) = *he is my (e.g.) uncle*  
which is used to describe relationships usually of the remoter kind (N.B. прихóдится usually = *one has to + inf.*).

The dative is also used in the following common expressions :

мо́жно мнѣ́ ? = *may I ?*

вамѣ́ невозмо́жно = *you may not*

вамѣ́ нельзѣ́ = *you must not*

пора́ намѣ́ ! = *it is time for us (sc. to go)*

я радѣ́ ва́шему приѣ́зду = *I am glad at your arrival.*

After adverbs expressing pleasure, displeasure, heat, cold, &c., e.g.

уто́дно-ли вамѣ́ ? = *would you like . . . ?*

какѣ́ вамѣ́ уто́дно = *just as you like*

мнѣ́ хо́лодно = *I am cold*

мнѣ́ тепло́ = *I am warm*

мнѣ́ жа́рко = *I am hot*

мнѣ́ непри́ятно + inf. = *it is unpleasant to me to . . .*

мнѣ́ жалѣ́ = *I am sorry.*

Also in expressing age :

ско́лько вамѣ́ лѣ́тъ ? = *how old are you ? (lit. = how many to you of years ?)*

мнѣ́ два́дцать лѣ́тъ = *I am twenty*

and in a few expressions such as :

э́та кни́га вамѣ́ = *this book is for you*

э́то мнѣ́ = *this is for me*

це́на э́тимъ мѣ́стамъ = *the price of these places*

онѣ́ намѣ́ сосѣ́дь = *he is our neighbour*

онѣ́ мнѣ́ врагѣ́ = *he is an enemy of mine*

э́то не пришло́ мнѣ́ въ го́лову = *it did not enter my head.*

The dative is also used with the infinitive to express *is to, has got to*, e. g.

кому́ написа́ть э́то пи́сьмо ? = *who is to write this letter ?*

э́тому не бы́ть = *this is not to be.*

Notice the idioms:

такъ себѣ = *fairly*

e. g.

какъ это вамъ нравится? такъ себѣ! = *how do you like that? so-so!*

и тому подобное = *and so on* (abbr. и т. п. = &c.) (lit. *and to that similar*: sometimes also in plur.)

домой = *homewards, [to] home.*

The dative is used after the following prepositions:

къ (ко before certain groups of consonants) = *to*

я пришёлъ къ вамъ = *I have come to you*

приходите къ намъ = *come to us, sc. come and see us*

приходите ко мнѣ = *come and see me*

у меня къ вамъ просьба = *I have a favour to ask you*

къ вечеру = *towards evening*

къ осени = *towards autumn, by the autumn*

къ началу октября = *by the beginning of October*

къ концу ноябрі = *by the end of November*

къ первому августу = *by the first of August*

къ пяти часамъ = *by five o'clock.*

Notice the idioms:

къ сожалѣнію = *unfortunately, to my regret*

къ несчастію = *unfortunately*

къ моему удивленію = *to my surprise*

это вамъ къ лицу = *that suits you* (of clothes), (lit. = *to you to the face*)

къ моимъ ногамъ = *(he fell) at my feet*

лицомъ къ лицу = *face to face*

къ какой стати? = *to what purpose?*

кстати = *by the by, that reminds me.*

вопреки = *against, in spite of*

вопреки приличіямъ = *in defiance of decorum*

по = *along, over, according to*

по улицѣ = *along the street*

по-морю = *over the sea, by sea*

по-моему or  
по моему мнѣнію } = *in my opinion*

почему ?	= <i>why ? (= on what grounds ?)</i>
потому что } (abb. п. т. ч.) }	= <i>because</i>
по прежнему	= <i>as formerly</i>
по новому стилю } по старому стилю }	= <i>according to old, new style</i>

(in dating letters, the Russian (Julian) calendar being thirteen days behind ours (Gregorian) ; the abbreviations are : с. с., н. с.).

Notice the very common idioms :

по-тихóньку	= <i>quietly, on the sly</i>
по-немнóжку } мáло-по-мáлу }	= <i>gradually, little by little</i>
по желéзной доро́гѣ	= <i>by rail</i>
по случáю + gen.	= <i>on the occasion of . . .</i>
по невóлѣ	= <i>perforce</i>
по моёй ча́сти	= <i>in my line, in my department (lit. part)</i>
я удáрилъ его́ по голо́вѣ	= <i>I hit him on the head</i>
я удáрилъ его́ по плеча́мъ	= <i>I hit him on the shoulders</i>
по возвы́шеннымъ цѣна́мъ	= <i>at raised prices (sc. higher than usual),</i>

also distributively :

по ночáмъ	= <i>at night (sc. frequently)</i>
по у́трамъ	= <i>in the morning (sc. every morning)</i>
по Воскресéніямъ	= <i>on Sundays, every Sunday</i>
онъ далъ всѣмъ намъ по я́блоку	= <i>he gave us all an apple each</i>
по пяти́ рублѣй (dat. + gen. pl.)	= <i>at five roubles.</i>

### § 83. The Accusative is used

(1) To denote the object of a transitive verb, e. g.

я люблю́ свою́ роди́ну = *I love my country.*

It has already been remarked that the acc. sing. and plur. of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -ь, and -ѣ, and the acc. plur. of feminine nouns ending in -а, -я is the same in form as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate, and the same as the nominative in the case of inanimate nouns.

The same rule applies to all adjectives and to all the pronouns except the personal pronouns and кто = *who* ; in these the acc. is always the same as the gen., even the acc. of the neuter pronoun

онó = *it* being the same, not as the nom. but as the gen., viz. егó.

It must be observed, however, that this was not always so; the old acc. was invariably the same as the nom., and this is still to be seen in a few expressions which became crystallized before the gen. came to be used for the acc. in the case of animate things; such phrases, amongst others, are:

вѣйти зámужь = *to marry*

(N.B. of the woman only; the phrase literally means *to go out behind a man or a husband*)

егó произвелъ въ полкóвники = *they have promoted him to be a colonel* (lit. *into the colonels*)

звать въ гóсти = *to invite* (lit. = *to call into guests*, sc. *as guests*)

поступить въ солдáты = *to enlist*.

(2) To express duration of time and distance:

эту зímу = *this winter*

цѣлое лѣто = *the whole summer*

прошлúю óсени. = *last autumn*

бúдущую веснú = *next spring*

одинъ годъ = *(for) one year*

крúтлый годъ = *the whole year round*

цѣлую недѣлю = *(for) a whole week*

мы прошлú двѣ версты (acc. + gen. sing., cf. § 61) = *we have walked two versts*.

(3) After the word жалъ = *pity*, e.g.

мнѣ жалъ вáшу сестрú = *I am sorry for your sister*

ему жалъ еѳ = *he is sorry for her*

мнѣ егó жалъ. = *I am sorry for him*.

The accusative is used after the following prepositions:

въ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *into*

я ѣду въ Россúю = *I am travelling to Russia*

я ѣду въ Лóндонъ = *I am travelling to London*

въ Крúмъ. = *to the Crimea*

онъ вошёлъ въ кóмнату = *he came into the room*.

Notice the following idiomatic uses :

въ понедѣльникъ	= on Monday
во вторникъ	= on Tuesday
въ день моего рождѣнія	= on my birthday
въ два часа	= at two o'clock
разъ въ день	= once a day
два раза въ недѣлю	= twice a week
во что-бы то ни стало	= cost what it may
въ два рубля	= costing two roubles
въ рубль	= at one rouble
въ два этажа	= two stories (high)
въ тысячу разъ лучше	= a thousand times better
въ старинѣ	= in the old days
во-время	= in time
во время + gen.	= during (the time of)
въ пору	= it is the right size
мнѣ не въ пору	= it doesn't fit me
вамъ въ пору	= it fits you
въ гору	= up-hill.
(Cf. вверхъ	= upwards
внизъ	= downwards.)

Notice the common expressions :

втеченіе + gen. (also written въ теченіе)	= in the course of
вслѣдствіе этого (also въ с . . .)	= as a result of this
въ продолженіе цѣлаго года	= for a whole year.

за = behind, beyond, for, by

я ѣду за границу	= I am going abroad (lit. beyond the frontier)
онъ поѣхалъ за-городъ	= he has gone out of town
онъ взялъ меня за руку	= he took me by the hand
сидемъ за столъ	= let us sit down to table
ей за-пятьдесятъ лѣтъ	= she is more than 50.

Always after the following verbs :

(по) благодарить	= to thank
купить } покупать }	= to buy



продавать }	= to sell
продать }	
молиться	= to pray

and expressions such as *praying for, fighting for*, e.g.

я благодарю васъ за ваше письмо	= I thank you for your letter
я купилъ это за рубль	= I bought this for a rouble
онъ мнѣ продалъ лошадь за пять сотъ рублей	= he sold me a horse for 500 roubles
молитесь за меня	= pray for me
жизнь за царя	= (one's) life for the tsar
за Англичанъ	= for (sc. in favour of) the English.

Notice the idioms :

за кого вы меня принимаете ?	= whom do you take me for ?
выйти } за . . .	= to marry
выходить }	
она вышла за немца	= she married a German
за кого она вышла ?	= whom did she marry ?

For the phrase *выйти замужъ* cf. p. 133.

Also in certain expressions of time and distance :

она умерла за два часа до вашего приезда	= she died two hours before your arrival
мы живёмъ за пять верстъ отъ станціи	= we live five versts from the station
за царствованіе Александра второго	= in the reign of Alexander II
за лѣто	= in the course of the summer (sc. when it is over).

Notice the idioms :

за хвостъ, за голову	= by the tail, by the head
за-руку, за-ногу	= by the hand, by the leg or foot
заодно	= in concert with
за то	= on the other hand.

на = on to

положите книгу на столъ	= put the book on the table
онъ лёгъ на-бокъ	= he lay down on his side
на колѣни	= on to (one's) knees
на землю	= on to the ground.

Notice the following idiomatic uses :

на-ночь	= for the night
онъ приѣхалъ на цѣлый мѣсяцъ	= he has come for a whole month
дня на-два	= for about two days
на другой день	= (on) the next day
на слѣдующій разъ (or) на другой р.)	= for next time
на-гору	= up-hill
на-берегъ моря	= to the seaside
ѣхать на Кавказъ	= to travel to the Caucasus
на-два рубля дороже	= dearer by two roubles
на пятьдесятъ копѣекъ дешевле	= cheaper by 50 kopeks
налицо	= present (sc. to be present), in cash
на силу	= with great effort
на-ново	= afresh
на-скоро	= quickly (sc. without taking much time or trouble)
положиться } на кого	= to have confidence in any one
надѣяться }	
кушайте на здорѣе!	= eat it to your health (a common phrase when showing hospitality)
на сѣверъ	= to the North
на югъ	= to the South
на востокъ	= to the East
на западъ	= to the West
это похоже на васъ	= that is like you (of a portrait)
это ни на что не похоже	= that is not like anything (sc. utterly bad, abominable)
на память	= from memory
на-показъ	= for show
на-вѣргъ	= upstairs (sc. motion up)
на-лѣво	= to the left
на-право	= to the right
наконецъ	= at last
наизустъ	= by heart (e.g. recitations, &c.)

о (before vowels only) = about, against

объ эту пору	= about this time
я ушибся о столъ	= I have hurt myself against the table
я оперся о колонну	= I leant against a column
рука объ руку	= arm in arm

по = *till*

отъ перваго (сч. числа) по тридцать-первое (сч. число) января =  
*from Jan. 1st-31st*

по колѣни въ водѣ = *up to the knees in the water.*

Notice the idioms:

по тѣ сторону = *(over on) that side (of the river)*

по правую рѣку = *on the right-hand side*

по лѣвую рѣку = *on the left-hand side.*

For the use of по + acc. in expression of money values, cf. § 69.

подъ = *under*

положите эту подушку себѣ подъ-голову = *put this pillow under  
 your head*

подъ-руку (взять кого) = *to take some one by the arm*

подъ-гору = *down-hill.*

про = *concerning*

про кого вы говорите? = *about whom are you talking?*

Notice the idiom:

про себя = *to oneself*

e. g. они смѣялись про себя = *they were laughing to themselves*

(про себя) = *(aside).*

сквозь = *through*

видно сквозь дымъ = *visible through the smoke*

сквозь лѣсъ = *through the forest, of anything that is visible  
 through the trees of the forest*

while черезъ лѣсъ = *through the forest, e. g. walking through the  
 forest.*

съ (so before certain groups of consonants) = *about, like*

онъ съ меня (сч. ростомъ) = *he is (as big) as me (сч. in growth)*

съ недѣлю = *about a week.*

черезъ (or чрезъ) = *through, across, via, over*

черезъ заборъ = *over the fence*

черезъ воду = *through the water*

черезъ воздухъ = *through the air*

черезъ лѣсъ = *through the forest*

черезъ рѣку = *across the river, or through the river* (sc. motion across)

черезъ Неву́ = *across the Neva*

черезъ Москвѣ́ = *across, through, or via Moscow*

черезъ ко́го ? = *through whom ?* (sc. *by whose agency ?*).

In expressions of time :

черезъ полъ-часá = *in half an hour's time*

черезъ недѣлю́ = *in a week.*

It also can mean *every other* :

черезъ часъ = *in an hour's time, or every other hour*

черезъ день = *every other day.*

### The Instrumental.

§ 84. The instrumental case denotes primarily, as its name implies, the instrument or agent by which anything is done, e.g.

писатьъ карандашомъ = *to write with a pencil*

это письмо́ написано мною́ = *this letter [was] written by me*

рука́ми = *with [one's] hands*

ного́й = *with [one's] foot, or leg.*

It denotes manner :

пароходомъ = *by steamer*

я ѣду́ въ Россію́ пароходомъ = *I am travelling to Russia by steamer*

сухимъ путёмъ = *overland (lit. by dry way)*

я поѣду́ сухимъ путёмъ = *I shall go overland*

море́мъ = *by sea*

толпо́й = *in a crowd*

стрѣло́й = *like an arrow*

лѣсо́мъ = *by (sc. through) the forest*

доро́жкой = *by the path*

по́лемъ = *by the field*

наложеннымъ плате́жемъ = *pay on delivery.*

Notice the idioms :

ѣхать ша́гомъ = *to drive (or ride) at walking-pace, 'au pas'*

идти́ пѣшкѡ́мъ = *to go on foot.*

and especially :

**ѣхать верхомъ** = *to ride* (sc. *on horseback*); **верхъ** = *top*, and the phrase literally means *to travel as the top* (sc. *the upper part*).

The phrase **кататься верхомъ**, lit. = *to roll along as the top* is also used; these two phrases are the only means of saying *to ride* in Russian. Notice also:

<b>рядомъ</b>	= <i>side by side</i>
<b>гуськомъ</b>	= <i>in single file</i>
<b>такимъ путёмъ</b>	= <i>in this way</i>
<b>какимъ образомъ?</b>	= <i>in what manner, how?</i>
<b>какимъ способомъ?</b>	= <i>by what means?</i>
<b>такимъ образомъ</b>	= <i>in this</i> (lit. <i>such</i> ) <i>manner, like that, and often means if you do this . . .</i>
<b>посредствомъ + gen.</b>	= <i>by means of</i>
<b>какимъ or которыми поѣздомъ?</b>	= <i>by which or what train?</i>
<b>мѣстами</b>	= <i>in places</i>
<b>большею частью</b>	= <i>for the most part</i>
<b>разомъ</b>	= <i>all at once, all together</i>
<b>оптомъ, гуртомъ</b>	= <i>(sell by) wholesale</i>
<b>цѣликомъ</b>	= <i>wholly, completely, all</i>
<b>лицомъ къ лицу</b>	= <i>face to face</i>
<b>однимъ словомъ</b>	= <i>in one word</i>
<b>другими словами</b>	= <i>in other words</i>
<b>его словами</b>	= <i>in his words</i>
<b>самó-собой</b>	= <i>of its own accord, automatically</i>
<b>самó собою разумѣется</b>	= <i>cela se comprend</i>
<b>она хороша собой</b>	= <i>she is good-looking</i> (here the <i>собо́й</i> merely amplifies the sentence; if anything it emphasizes the compliment, but is really untranslatable in English)
<b>волей-неволей</b>	= <i>willy-nilly.</i>

In certain expressions of the time of day and the seasons:

<b>весной</b>	= <i>in the spring</i>
<b>лѣтомъ</b>	= <i>in the summer</i>
<b>осенью</b>	= <i>in the autumn</i>
<b>зимой</b>	= <i>in the winter</i>

(when preceded by the demonstrative pronoun always use the acc., cf. § 83)

<b>утромъ</b>	= <i>in the morning</i>
<b>вечеромъ</b>	= <i>in the evening</i>

днёмъ = *by day*, and also very frequently = *in the afternoon*  
 ночьюъ = *by night*.

N.B. (1) *this morning* is сегодня утромъ (lit. = *to-day in the morning*)

(2) *this evening* is сегодня вечеромъ (lit. = *to-day in the evening*),  
 similarly завтра утромъ = *to-morrow morning*, &c.

It is used in expressions such as:

тѣмъ богаты, тѣмъ и рады = *what we are rich in, to that you are welcome* (lit. = *with that we are glad*, sc. *that we will gladly give*).

It denotes origin:

родомъ Англичанинъ = *by birth an Englishman*.

It is used in some expressions of measurement:

рѣка шириной въ полъ-версты = *a river about half a verst wide (in width)*

гора въ тысячу футовъ вышиной = *a hill 1000 feet in height*

also глубиной = *in depth*.

In comparison of measures, e.g.

я годомъ старше егó = *I am older than he by a year*

though these phrases are more commonly expressed by на + acc.  
 (cf. § 83) or въ + разъ (cf. §§ 65, 83)

тѣмъ лучше = *all the better*

тѣмъ не менѣе = *nevertheless*

тѣмъ болѣе = *all the more*.

The instrumental is always used after certain verbs:

любоваться = *to admire* (but only literally *to gaze at*)

пользоваться }  
 воспользоваться } = *to take advantage of, to profit by*

пользуюсь этимъ случаемъ + inf. = *I am taking advantage of this occasion to . . .*

гордиться = *to be proud of*

я горжусь вами = *I am proud of you*

дорожить = *to value highly*

жертвовать } = to sacrifice  
пожертвовать }

онъ пожертвовалъ всёю своимъ состояніемъ = *he sacrificed the whole of his fortune*

владѣть = to rule, command

Англія владѣетъ Индіей = *England rules India*

онъ хорошо владѣетъ русскимъ языкомъ = *he has a good command of the Russian language*

командовать = to be in command over (troops, &c.)

руководить = to lead

управлять = to manage

онъ управляетъ моимъ имѣніемъ = *he manages my property*

завѣдывать = to look after

она завѣдуетъ домомъ = *she looks after the house*

прáвить = to drive

онъ хорошо прáвить лошадыми = *he drives a carriage (lit. horses) very well.*

дышать = to breathe

пахнуть = to smell (intrans.)

что́ это пахнетъ? = *what does this smell of?*

A very common and at first sight puzzling use of the instrumental is that called *predicative*. The predicate is put in the instrumental instead of in the nominative whenever any temporary or hypothetical condition is to be indicated, e. g.

когда́ я былъ мальчикомъ = *when I was a boy*

онъ́ будетъ великимъ человѣкомъ = *he is going to be a great man*

лежаніе у него́ не было ни необходимостью ни случайностью  
= *lying down was in his case neither a necessity nor an accident*

послать . . . . заказнымъ = *to send . . . registered.*

The predicative instrumental is used after the following verbs :

дѣлаться } = to become  
становиться }

называться = to be called

звать = to call

меня́ зову́тъ Ива́номъ = *they call me Ivan, i. e. my name is Ivan*

служить = *to serve as*

это служило мнѣ предлогомъ = *this served me as an excuse*

считаться = *to be considered*

это считается хорошимъ жалованіемъ = *that is considered good pay*

это считается невежливымъ = *that is considered rude*

слыть = *to have the reputation*

родиться = *to be born*

казаться = *to seem*

дѣло казалось серьёзнымъ = *the matter seemed serious*

притворяться = *to pretend to be.*

The instrumental is used after the following prepositions:

за = *behind, for (to get something)*

за границей = *abroad (lit. = beyond the frontier)*

за столомъ = *at table*

за обѣдомъ = *at dinner*

за-городомъ = *out of town*

я пришёл за деньгами = *I have come for the money*

надо послать за докторомъ = *(we) must send for the doctor*

зачѣмъ? = *why? (sc. with what object?)*

за тѣмъ чтобы + inf. = *in order to . . .*

затѣмъ = *after that, then.*

It is always used of a woman being married (cf. за + acc., § 83):

она замужемъ = *she is married*

за кѣмъ она замужемъ? = *to whom is she married?*

между = *between* (also but less often with gen.)

между Петроградомъ и Москвою = *between Petrograd and Moscow*

между нами = *between us* (both of concrete objects and of emotions), *amongst us*

между прочимъ = *amongst other things.*

Notice the idioms:

между тѣмъ = *meanwhile, cependant.*

надъ (надо before certain groups of consonants) = *above*

надъ головою = *above (my) head*

надо мной = *above me (only literally)*



пéредь (передо before certain groups of consonants) = *before, in front of*

пéредь до́момъ = *in front of the house*

пéредо мно́й = *in front of me*

пéредь э́тимъ = *before this (temporal)*

пéредь о́бѣдомъ = *before dinner*

пéредь тѣ́мъ какъ + inf. = *before + verb (e.g. going).*

подъ (подо before certain groups of consonants) = *under, near*

подъ землёй = *underground*

подо мно́й = *under me*

подъ э́тимъ усло́виемъ = *on this condition*

подъ ка́кимъ предло́гомъ ? = *under what pretext ?*

подъ Москв́ой = *near Moscow*

подъ Лондо́номъ = *near London.*

съ (со before certain groups of consonants) = *with*

со мно́й = *with me*

съ большо́мъ удово́лствиемъ = *with great pleasure*

съ наслаждéниемъ = *with relish*

съ трудо́мъ = *with difficulty*

со вре́менемъ = *in course of time*

съ кѣ́мъ вы говори́ли ? = *with whom were you talking ?*

съ ка́кой цѣ́лью ? = *with what object ?*

съ Бо́гомъ ! = *good-bye ! (lit. with God)*

Бо́гъ съ ни́ми ! = *never mind them ! (lit. God be with them).*

§ 85. The Locative is only used with prepositions, hence it is sometimes called the prepositional case.

The locative is used with the following prepositions:—

въ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *in*

въ Москв́ѣ = *in Moscow*

во мнѣ́ = *in me*

во Фран́ции = *in France*

въ Кры́му = *in the Crimea* (cf. § 39, Obs. 7)

въ концѣ́ = *at the end*

въ нача́лѣ = *at the beginning*

во снѣ́ = *in one's sleep or dreams.*

Notice the idioms :

въ концѣ-концовъ = *at long last, finally*  
 въ самомъ дѣлѣ = *in very fact.*

In certain expressions of time :

въ слѣдующемъ году = *the following year*  
 въ такомъ-то году = *such and such a year*  
 въ первомъ часѣ = *between 12 and 1*  
 во второмъ часѣ = *between 1 and 2.*

For other similar expressions, cf. § 68.

втайнѣ = *secretly*  
 впоследствии = *subsequently*  
 вполне = *completely, thoroughly.*

на = *on*

на столѣ = *on the table*  
 на берегу моря = *on the sea-shore, at the seaside*  
 на боку = *on (one's) side*  
 на солнцѣ = *in the sun*  
 на дворѣ = *in the yard*

(this is the commonest way of saying out of doors)

на льду = *on the ice (fr. лёдъ)*  
 на мосту = *on the bridge*  
 на службѣ = *in service (sc. Government service)*  
 на небѣ = *in heaven, in the sky*  
 на свѣжемъ воздухѣ = *in the fresh air*  
 на свѣтѣ = *in the world*  
 на свободѣ = *at liberty.*

Notice the idioms :

на своемъ вѣку = *in one's time, in one's life*  
 наяву = *in reality (as opposed to in one's sleep)*  
 на лошадахъ = *by carriage, driving (lit. = on horses)*  
 на-единѣ = *alone, in solitude.*

It is used of men marrying, after the verb жениться = *to marry* :

онъ женился на русскоѣ = *he married a Russian*  
 на комъ онъ женатъ ? = *to whom is he married ?*

Notice the compound adverb :

наканунѣ = *on the eve.*

о (объ before vowels and often before consonants also ; обо before certain groups of consonants) = *concerning*

обо мнѣ = *about me*

о or объ чѣмъ вы говорили ? = *what were you talking about ?*

обо всемъ = *about everything.*

In certain expressions of number :

о двухъ концахъ = *with two ends.*

по = *after*

по приѣздѣ = *on or after arrival*

по нашемъ возвращеніи = *on our return.*

Notice the idioms :

скупать по родинѣ = *to be home-sick (for one's country)*

по чѣмъ ? = *at what price ?*

по чѣмъ аршинъ ? = *how much a yard ?* cf. § 69.

при = *in the presence of, in the time of, near*

при мнѣ = *in my presence, in my time, by me, near me, on me*

при дворѣ = *at court*

при Екатеринѣ Великой = *in the time of Catherine the Great*

при битвѣ подъ Лейпцигомъ = *at the battle of (lit. near, under) Leipzig.*

Notice the idioms :

при чѣмъ = *in addition to which, besides which*

при томъ = *besides that*

при всемъ томъ = *in addition to all that, in spite of all that*

при всемъ моемъ стараніи = *in spite of all my efforts.*

## THE VERB

§ 86. The Russian verb consists of the following parts :

Present	}	Active
Past		
Future		
Conditional		
—		
Imperative		
—		
Infinitive		
—		
Present Gerund		
Past Gerund		
—	}	Passive
Present Participle		
Past Participle		
Present Participle	}	Passive
Past Participle		

The present is the only tense which has personal endings. The past is a tense only in name; in reality it is a participle whose endings vary not according to person, but according to number and gender. The future in form is exactly the same as the present. The conditional in form is exactly the same as the past. There is no subjunctive. There is no passive of any part of the verb except the participles, and if anything is expressed in the passive, it must be done by means of participles or of the reflexive verb (cf. § 110).

## Use of the Personal Pronouns with the Verb.

The personal pronouns :

я	= I
ты	= thou
онъ, она, оно	= he, she, it
мы	= we
вы	= you
они (M. N.), онѣ (F.)	= they

are used in Russian with the verbs very much as in English; in certain cases they are, however, omitted altogether, e.g. when the verb is used, as it frequently is, in an answer in reply to a question instead of да (= yes) or нѣтъ (= no), e.g.:

Question: БЫЛИ-ЛИ ВЫ У НИХЪ ВЧЕРА? = *did you go to see them yesterday?* (lit. *were you at their house?*)

Answer: БЫТЬ = *I did* (lit. *I was*)

Question: БУДЕТЕ-ЛИ ВЫ У НЕГО СЕГОДНЯ? = *will you go to see him to-day?*

Answer: БУДУ = *I shall*

Question: МОЖЕТЕ-ЛИ ВЫ СДѢЛАТЬ ЭТО ДЛЯ МЕНЯ? = *can you do this for me?*

Answer: МОГУ = *I can*.

The pronoun онó is comparatively rarely used; its place is often taken by это, e.g.

это было очень давно = *it was a very long time ago*

or it is omitted altogether, e.g.

теплó сегодня = *it is warm to-day*.

When it is used it often acquires the meaning of *the thing we were referring to* or *what you were talking about*, e.g.

онó, конечно, неприятно = *(a thing like) that (sc. which we were discussing) is, of course, unpleasant*.

## § 87.

## The Present.

### REGULAR VERBS.

In Old Bulgarian the verbs are divided into five classes, and for etymological purposes Russian verbs can be similarly treated. For practical purposes, however, it is best to divide the verbs into only two classes, not according to the infinitive, but according to the endings of the present. The few irregular verbs which there are, which in Old Bulgarian form the fifth class, are in Russian not sufficiently numerous to form a class by themselves, but as they are very important they are given in full in a separate paragraph. For the regular verbs there are two sets of personal endings, which are added to the verb-stem sometimes directly,

sometimes with a vowel (-а-, -я-, -ѣ-, -у-, -ю-) or a consonant (-н-) inserted between stem and ending.

The first difficulty to be faced is the fact that though every present may be put in one class or the other, the infinitives are much more difficult to classify, because verbs having various infinitive endings have identical present endings, and others having identical infinitive endings have different present endings. In the lists of verbs given they are arranged alphabetically according to the last letter of the present stem as seen in the 2nd pers. sing., those ending in consonants + *y* first, those ending in vowels + *ю* later.

Another difficulty is that the palatal qualities of the vowels in the personal endings have in many cases affected the last consonant of the stem, so that the present stem differs from the infinitive stem. The present endings of the two main classes of Russian verbs are the following:

	I.	II.
Sing.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ -у (or -ю)} \\ 2 \text{ -ешь}^1 \\ 3 \text{ -еть} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -ю \text{ (or -у)} \\ -ишь \\ -ишь \end{array} \right.$
Plur.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ -емъ} \\ 2 \text{ -ете} \\ 3 \text{ -уть (or -ють)} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -имъ \\ -ите \\ -ять \text{ (or -ятъ)}^2 \end{array} \right.$

Class I comprises all the verbs contained in the first three classes in Old Bulgarian; in that language the endings of class I were 2nd sing. -ѣши, 3rd sing. -ѣтъ (-*efi*, -*et*, cf. § 36), &c., of class II -нешѣ, -нетъ (-*nefi*, -*net*), of class III -ѣши, -ѣтъ (-*je/i*, -*jet*); in Russian these appear respectively as -*jes*, -*jet*, -*njes*, -*njet*, and -*jes*, -*jet*, i.e. the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. all begin with -*je* (pron. *ye*). Of the verbs which originally belonged to class I, those whose stems end in *r* or *k* change these letters to *ж* and *ч* before the palatal vowels of the endings -*ef*, -*je/i*, &c., but retain the *r* and *k* before the -*y* of the 1st sing. and 3rd plur. The

<sup>1</sup> When the accent falls on the personal ending the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. of class I are pronounced: -ѣшь (cf. § 14), -ѣтъ, -ѣтъ, -ѣте.

<sup>2</sup> When unaccented these endings (3rd plur. of class II) are generally pronounced -ють (or -утъ).

stems of the verbs which insert *-н-* between the stem and the personal ending undergo no change. Of the verbs which originally belonged to class III, those whose stems end in vowels take the endings *-ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ*, those whose stems end in consonants changed them (except in the case of those in *-х* and of a few in *-п*) before the palatal vowels of the personal endings *-ю, -еѣ, &c.*, in such a way as to absorb the *y*-sound contained in them, viz. final *к, т* of a stem becomes *ч, or ш*, final *г, д, з* become *ж*, and final *с* and *х* become *ш*, the personal endings appearing as *-чу, -чешь, -жу, -жешь, -шу, -шешь, and -шу, -пешь*.

In class II the first person singular is often disguised as *-у* (i.e. apparently the same as in class I); the reason is that the *-ю* of the 1st sing. changes final *к* and *т* of the stem into *ч* or *ш*, final *г, д*, and *з* into *ж*, and final *с* and *х* into *ш*. It also becomes *у* when the stem itself ends in *ч, ж*, or *ш*. Similarly the *я* of the 3rd plur. becomes *а* when the stem ends in *ч, ж*, or *ш*. In class II those stems which end in *н, б, в*, and *м* insert *н* before the *-ю* of the 1st sing.

Another difficulty which the beginner has to face is that of the prepositions in composition with the verbs. Verbs compounded with a preposition (i.e. preceded by it) are infinitely more numerous than those without, and this fact makes the beginner think at first sight that the language possesses an infinitely larger number of verbs than it really does. When reading Russian the beginner should always try and see the root or stem of each verb and cut off the preposition or prepositions which precede it. For this purpose it is important to learn the prepositions given in §§ 79-85, and also to compare them with those given in dealing with prepositions in composition with verbs. As the prepositions always have an especial effect on the meaning of each verb, only simple verbs have been given in the following lists, the alteration in meaning effected by the various prepositions being discussed later. Many of the verbs given in these lists are extremely uncommon, others not used in their simple form; the student should not attempt to learn the lists, but only use them for reference. The list of the verbs under class I contains all the difficult primary verbs which belong to this class; otherwise the lists given are very far from being exhaustive; they are merely intended to be representative. The verbs are arranged alpha-

betically according to the last letter of the present stem, those ending in a consonant + *y* first, those ending in a consonant + *ю* next, and lastly those ending in a vowel + *ю*. Only the 1st and 2nd persons sing. and the infinitive are given. In class I, whenever the 1st sing. ends in -*y* the 3rd pl. ends in -*уть*, when the 1st sing. ends in -*ю* the 3rd pl. ends in -*ють*. In both classes, on whichever syllable the accent is in the 2nd sing., that syllable retains it throughout. Those verbs preceded by a hyphen are only used in composition, and examples of them compounded with prepositions are given below. All those verbs marked with F are perfective and their presents always have future meaning, cf. § 101:

## § 88.

## CLASS I.

Examples of presents:

(Inf. <i>мочь</i> )	(Inf. <i>идти</i> <sup>1</sup> )
мог <sup>у</sup> = <i>I can</i>	ид <sup>у</sup> = <i>I am going</i> (sc. on foot)
може <sup>шь</sup>	иде <sup>шь</sup>
может <sup>ь</sup>	иде <sup>тъ</sup>
можем <sup>ь</sup>	иде <sup>мъ</sup>
можете	иде <sup>те</sup>
могут <sup>ь</sup>	иду <sup>тъ</sup>
(Inf. <i>тянуть</i> )	(Inf. <i>брать</i> )
тян <sup>у</sup> = <i>I am pulling</i>	бер <sup>у</sup> = <i>I take, I am taking</i>
тяне <sup>шь</sup>	бере <sup>шь</sup>
тяне <sup>тъ</sup>	бере <sup>тъ</sup>
тянем <sup>ь</sup>	бере <sup>мъ</sup>
тянете	бере <sup>те</sup>
тянут <sup>ь</sup>	беру <sup>тъ</sup>
(Inf. <i>писать</i> )	(Inf. <i>слать</i> )
пиш <sup>у</sup> = <i>I write, I am writing</i>	шлю <sup>²</sup> = <i>I am sending</i>
пише <sup>шь</sup>	шл <sup>е</sup> шь
пишет <sup>ь</sup>	шл <sup>е</sup> тъ
пишем <sup>ь</sup>	шл <sup>е</sup> мъ
пишете	шл <sup>е</sup> те
пишут <sup>ь</sup>	шлю <sup>тъ</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Also spelt *ити*.

<sup>2</sup> In the case of this verb the palatal quality of the personal endings has affected the *c* of the stem through the *л*.



(Inf. дѣлать)

дѣлаю = *I do, I am doing*

дѣлаешь

дѣлаешь

дѣлаемъ

дѣлаете

дѣлають

(Inf. пить)

пью = *I drink, I am drinking*

пьёшь

пьёшь

пѣмъ

пѣте

пѣють

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs and others :

Present.		Infinitive.	
-б +			
гребѹ	гребёшь	гребѣти	row
скребѹ	скребёшь	скребити	scrape
-шибѹ <sup>1</sup>	-шибёшь F	-шибѣти	(hit)
-в +			
ревѹ	ревёшь	ревѣти	roar
живѹ	живёшь	жить	live
зовѹ	зовёшь	звать	call
рвѹ	рвёшь	рвать	tear
плывѹ	плывёшь	плыть	float
слывѹ	слывёшь	слыть	be renowned as
-г +	[ж = г + (j)e]		
берегѹ	бережёшь	беречь	keep
стерегѹ	стерожёшь	стеречь	guard
жгѹ	жжёшь	жечь	burn (trans.)
стригѹ	стрижёшь	стричь	shear
лгѹ	лжёшь	лгать	prevaricate
могѹ	можёшь	мочь	be able
бѣгѹ (cf. § 89)	—	бѣжать	run
лягѹ	ляжешь F	лечь	lie down
-прягѹ <sup>2</sup>	-пряхёшь F	-прячь	(harness)
д +			
кладѹ	кладёшь	класть	put
падѹ	падёшь	пасть	fall

<sup>1</sup> e.g. ушибѣти = *to bruise*.

<sup>2</sup> e.g. запрячь = *to harness*.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
крадѹ	крадѣшь	красть	<i>steal</i>
ведѹ	ведѣшь	вести	<i>lead</i>
брѣдѹ	брѣдѣшь	брести	<i>wander</i>
ждѹ	ждѣшь	ждать	<i>(a) wait</i>
идѹ	идѣшь	идти	<i>go (sc. on foot)</i>
бѹдѹ	бѹдѣшь	быть	<i>be</i>
блюдѹ	блюдѣшь	блюсти	<i>watch</i>
ѣдѹ (cf. § 89)	ѣдѣшь	ѣхать	<i>ride, drive</i>
прядѹ	прядѣшь	прясть	<i>spin</i>
сѣдѹ	сѣдѣшь F	сѣсть	<i>sit down</i>
ж +			
( = г, д, з + -ju )		( = г, д, з + -je- )	
·кажѹ <sup>1</sup>	·кажѣшь F	·казать	<i>(show)</i>
мажѹ	мажѣшь	мазать	<i>smear</i>
брызжѹ <sup>2</sup>	брызжѣшь	брызгать	<i>splash</i>
лижѹ	лижѣшь	лизать	<i>lick</i>
гложѹ	гложѣшь	глодать	<i>gnaw</i>
ржѹ	ржѣшь	ржать	<i>neigh</i>
рѣжѹ	рѣжѣшь	рѣзать	<i>cut</i>
вяжѹ	вяжѣшь	вязать	<i>bind, knit</i>
з +			
везѹ	везѣшь	везти	<i>convey</i>
ползѹ	ползѣшь	ползти	<i>crawl</i>
грызѹ	грызѣшь	грызть	<i>gnaw</i>
лѣзѹ	лѣзѣшь	лѣзть	<i>clamber</i>
к +			
(ч = к + (j.e))			
влекѹ	влекѣшь	влекъ	<i>draw</i>
пекѹ	пекѣшь	печь	<i>bake</i>
текѹ	текѣшь	течь	<i>flow</i>
толкѹ	толкѣшь	толочь	<i>knock</i>
волоку <sup>3</sup>	волочѣшь	волочь	<i>drag</i>
тку	тчѣшь	ткать	<i>weave</i>
сѣкѹ	сѣкѣшь	сѣчь	<i>cut, flog</i>

<sup>1</sup> e.g. сказать = *to say*, показать = *to show*, but the reflexive казаться = *to seem* is used in the simple form.

<sup>2</sup> Also брызгаю, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Also волоку́, волочи́шь, волочи́ть (class II).

*Present.**Infinitive.*

м +			
жму	жмѡшь	жать	squeeze
-ниму <sup>1</sup>	-нѣмѡшь F	-нять } -ять }	(take)
-иму <sup>2</sup>	-имѡшь F		
-ьму <sup>3</sup>	-ьмѡшь F		
н +			
стану	станѡшь F	стать	become, begin(intrans.)
гну	гнѡшь	гнуть	bend
жну	жнѡшь	жать	reap
мну	мнѡшь	мять	crush
стону	стонѡшь	стонать <sup>4</sup>	groan
-пну <sup>5</sup>	-пнѡшь F	-пить	(stretch)
-чну <sup>6</sup>	-чнѡшь F	-чать	(begin)
дѣну	дѣнѡшь F	дѣть	put
клянѣу	клянѣнѡшь	клясть	curse
тяну	тянѡшь	тянуть	pull

*Verbs connoting a gradual process :*

мёрзну	мёрзнёшь	мёрзнуть	<i>be frozen</i>
мокну	мокнуёшь	мокнуть	<i>be soaked</i>
гасну	гаснёшь	гаснуть	<i>die down</i>
кисну	киснёшь	киснуть	<i>grow sour</i>
тихну	тихнёшь	тихнуть	<i>grow quiet</i>
сохну	сохнёшь	сохнуть	<i>grow dry</i>
тонѣу	тонѣнёшь	тонѣть	<i>drown (intrans.)</i>
стыну	стынёшь	стынуть	<i>grow cold</i>

*Verbs connoting a single action :*

двинѣу	двинѣнёшь F	двинѣть	<i>move (trans.)</i>
кину	кинёшь F	кинуть	<i>throw</i>
крикну	крикнёшь F	крикнуть	<i>cry out</i>
трону	тронёшь F	тронуть	<i>touch</i>
шепну	шепнёшь F	шепнуть	<i>whisper</i>

<sup>1</sup> e.g. обниму́, обнимёшь, обнять = *to embrace*.сниму́, снимёшь, снять = *to take off, to photograph*.<sup>2</sup> e.g. приму́, примёшь, принять = *to accept*.<sup>3</sup> e.g. возьму́, возьмёшь, взять = *to take*.<sup>4</sup> Also has present стонаю́, стонаёшь.<sup>5</sup> e.g. распять = *to crucify*.<sup>6</sup> e.g. начать = *to begin (trans.)*.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
<b>р +</b>			
вру	врѣшь	врать	<i>prevaricate</i>
беру́	берѣшь	брать	<i>take</i>
деру́	дерѣшь	драть	<i>tear</i>
жру́	жрѣшь	жрать	<i>devour</i>
-мру <sup>1</sup>	-мрѣшь F	-мерѣть	( <i>die</i> )
-пру <sup>2</sup>	-прѣшь F	-перѣть	( <i>press</i> )
тру	трѣшь	терѣть	<i>rub</i>
-стру <sup>3</sup>	-стрѣшь F	-стерѣть	( <i>stretch</i> )
<b>с +</b>			
пасу́	пасѣшь	пасті́	<i>pasture</i>
несу́	несѣшь	несті́	<i>carry</i>
трясу́	трясѣшь	трясті́	<i>shake (trans.)</i>
<b>т +</b>			
плету́	плетѣшь	плести́	<i>plait</i>
мету́	метѣшь	мести́	<i>sweep</i>
гнету́	гнетѣшь	гнести́	<i>press, oppress</i>
расту́ <sup>4</sup>	растѣшь	расті́	<i>grow (intrans.)</i>
-чту <sup>5</sup>	-чтѣшь F	-честі́	( <i>read</i> )
цвѣту́	цвѣтѣшь	цвѣсті́	<i>blossom</i>
-рѣту́ <sup>6</sup>	-рѣтѣшь F	-рѣсті́	( <i>obtain</i> )
<b>ч + (= к, т + -ju) (= к, т + -je-)</b>			
плачу́	плачѣшь	плакати́	<i>weep</i>
мечу́	мѣчѣшь	метати́	<i>fling</i>
хочу́ (cf. § 89)	хѣчѣшь	хотѣти́	<i>wish</i>
хохочу́	хохѣчѣшь	хохотати́	<i>laugh loud</i>
шепчу́	шепчѣшь	шептати́	<i>whisper</i>
топчу́	топчѣшь	топтати́	<i>tread (trans.)</i>
прячу́	прѣчѣшь	прѣтати́	<i>hide (trans.)</i>
<b>ш + (= с, х + -ju) (= с, х + -je-)</b>			
машу́ <sup>7</sup>	мáшѣшь	махати́	<i>wave</i>
пашу́	пáшѣшь	пахати́	<i>plough</i>
чешу́ <sup>8</sup>	чѣшѣшь	чесати́	<i>comb</i>

<sup>1</sup> e. g. умерѣть = *to die*.<sup>2</sup> e. g. простерѣть = *to extend*.<sup>3</sup> e. g. прочѣсть = *to read through*.<sup>4</sup> Also has махати́, махѣшь.<sup>5</sup> Cf. the impersonal reflexive чѣшется = *it itches*.<sup>6</sup> e. g. заперѣть = *to close*.<sup>7</sup> Also spelt рошту́, ростѣшь, &c.<sup>8</sup> e. g. приобрѣсти́ = *to obtain*.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
пиш <sup>у</sup>	пи́шешь	писа́ть	write
пляш <sup>у</sup>	пля́шешь	пляса́ть	dance
щ + (= ск + - <i>ju</i> (= ск + - <i>je-</i> and т + - <i>ju</i> )      and т + - <i>je-</i> )			
трепещ <sup>у</sup>	трепéщешь	трепетáть	tremble
ищ <sup>у</sup>	и́щешь	иска́ть	look for
ропщ <sup>у</sup>	ропéщешь	роптáть	murmur
л +			
колебл <sup>ю</sup>	колебл́ешь	колебáть	rock
мел <sup>ю</sup> (cf. § 89)	мел́ешь	молóть	grind (corn)
стел <sup>ю</sup>	стел́ешь	стлáть	spread
внемл <sup>ю</sup> <sup>1</sup>	внемл́ешь	внимáть	heed
дремл <sup>ю</sup>	дремл́ешь	дремáть	slumber
кол <sup>ю</sup>	кол́ешь	колóть	pierce
пол <sup>ю</sup>	пол́ешь	полóть	unstitch
сыпл <sup>ю</sup>	сыпл́ешь	сыпáть	scatter
шл <sup>ю</sup> (cf. p. 150)	шл́ешь	слáть	send
р +			
бор <sup>ю</sup> сь (cf. § 100)	борéшься	борóться	struggle
пор <sup>ю</sup>	порéшь	порóть	rake
а +			
да <sup>ю</sup>	даёшь	давáть	give
ла <sup>ю</sup>	лаёшь	ла́ять	bark
дѣла <sup>ю</sup>	дѣлаёшь	дѣлáть	do, make
зна <sup>ю</sup>	знаёшь	знáть	know
-зна <sup>ю</sup> <sup>2</sup>	-знаёшь	-знавáть	(recognize)
игра <sup>ю</sup>	играёшь	игрáть	play
та <sup>ю</sup>	таёшь	тáять	thaw, melt
читá <sup>ю</sup>	читáешь	читáть	read
-ста <sup>ю</sup> <sup>3</sup>	-стаёшь	-ставáть	(become)
-лучá <sup>ю</sup> <sup>4</sup>	-лучáешь	-лучáть	(receive)

and very many others.

<sup>1</sup> Also has present внимáю, &c.

<sup>2</sup> e.g. узнавáть = to recognize.

<sup>3</sup> e.g. устанáть = to grow tired, and numerous other compounds.

<sup>4</sup> e.g. получáть = to receive.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
<b>і +</b>			
гнію	гнієшь	гнити	<i>rot</i>
вопію	вопієшь	вопіять <sup>1</sup>	<i>wait</i>
<b>о +</b>			
вою	воєшь	выть	<i>howl</i>
мою	моєшь	мыть	<i>wash (trans.)</i>
ною	ноєшь	ныть	<i>ache</i>
пою	поєшь	пѣть	<i>sing</i>
рою	роєшь	рыть	<i>dig</i>
крою	кроешь	крыть	<i>cover</i>
<b>у +</b>			
торгую	торгуєшь	торговать	<i>trade</i>
жую	жуєшь	жевать	<i>chew</i>
кую	куєшь	ковать	<i>forge</i>
сую	суюєшь	снывать	<i>weave</i>
сую	суюєшь	совать	<i>poke</i>
советую	советуєшь	советовать	<i>advise</i>
танцую	танцуєшь	танцевать	<i>dance</i>
чую	чуєшь	чуют	<i>scent</i>
ночую	ночуєшь	ночевать	<i>pass the night</i>
потчую	потчуєшь	потчевать	<i>treat</i>
and many others, including those formed from non-Russian words (of which the infinitive usually ends in -ировать), e.g.			
аплодирую	аплодируєшь	аплодировать	<i>applaud</i>
формирую	формируєшь	формировать	<i>form</i>
<b>ь +</b>			
бью	бьєшь	бить	<i>hit</i>
вью	вьєшь	вить	<i>wind</i>
лью	льєшь	лить	<i>pour</i>
пью	пьєшь	пить	<i>drink</i>
шью	шьєшь	шить	<i>sew</i>
<b>ѣ +</b>			
вѣю	вѣєшь	вѣять	<i>waft</i>
-дѣюсь <sup>2</sup> (cf. § 100)	-дѣєшься	-дѣяться	<i>(hope)</i>

<sup>1</sup> Has alternative form воплю, вопишь, вопитъ (class 11).

<sup>2</sup> надѣюсь, надѣешься, надѣяться = *to hope*.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
бѣлѣю	бѣлѣешь	бѣлѣть	<i>show white</i>
имѣю	имѣешь	имѣть	<i>have, possess</i>
смѣю	смѣешь	смѣть	<i>dare</i>
смѣюсь (cf. § 100)	смѣёшься	смѣяться	<i>laugh</i>
умѣю	умѣешь	умѣть	<i>know how to</i>
спѣю <sup>1</sup>	спѣешь	спѣть	<i>ripen</i>
старѣю	старѣешь	старѣть	<i>grow old</i>
брѣю <sup>2</sup>	брѣешь	брѣть	<i>shave</i>
грѣю	грѣешь	грѣть	<i>warm</i>
зрѣю <sup>3</sup>	зрѣешь	зрѣть	<i>ripen</i>
сѣю	сѣешь	сѣять	<i>sow</i>
-тѣю <sup>4</sup>	-тѣешь F	-тѣять	<i>(plan)</i>
ю +			
блюю	блюешь	блевать	<i>vomit</i>
клюю	клюешь	клевать	<i>peck</i>
плюю	плюешь	плевать	<i>spit</i>
воюю	воеешь	воевать	<i>make war</i>
горюю	гореешь	горевать	<i>mourn</i>
я +			
ваяю	ваеешь	ваять	<i>sculpt</i>
гуляю	гулеешь	гулять	<i>walk</i>
-виняюсь <sup>5</sup> (cf. § 100)	-виняешься	-виняться	<i>(excuse)</i>

## CLASS II.

(Inf. любить)

люблю = *I love*  
 любишь  
 любить  
 любимъ  
 любите  
 любятъ

(Inf. видѣть)

вижу = *I see*  
 видишь  
 видѣть  
 видимъ  
 видите  
 видѣтъ

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confused with спюю, снѣтъ a compound of нѣтъ.<sup>2</sup> Also spelt брѣю, &c.<sup>3</sup> Not to be confused with зрю, зрѣтъ (class II) = *to see*.<sup>4</sup> затѣю, &c. = *to plan, contrive*.<sup>5</sup> извиняться = *to excuse oneself*.

(Inf. лежать)

леж<sup>у</sup> = *I lie, am lying*  
 лежишь  
 лежатъ  
 лежимъ  
 лежите  
 лежатъ

(Inf. спать)

сплю  
 спишь  
 спятъ  
 спимъ  
 спите  
 спятъ

(Inf. говорить)

говор<sup>ю</sup> =  $\begin{cases} I \text{ speak, am speaking} \\ I \text{ say, am saying} \end{cases}$

говоришь  
 говорятъ  
 говоримъ  
 говорите  
 говорятъ

(Inf. платить)

плач<sup>у</sup> = *I pay*

платишь<sup>1</sup>  
 платятъ<sup>1</sup>  
 платимъ<sup>1</sup>  
 платите<sup>1</sup>  
 платятъ<sup>1</sup>

(Inf. учить)

уч<sup>у</sup> = *I teach*  
 учишь  
 учить  
 учимъ  
 учите  
 учать

(Inf. слышать)

слыш<sup>у</sup> = *I hear*  
 слышишь  
 слышатъ  
 слышимъ  
 слышите  
 слышать

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs and others:

Present.		Infinitive.	
б +			
люблю	любишь	любить	love
в +			
ловлю	ловишь	ловить	catch

<sup>1</sup> The accented a in all these five persons is usually pronounced like accented o in the case of this verb.



*Present.**Infinitive.*

(г + becomes ж)

(д + becomes ж  
in 1st pers.  
sing.)

д +

ла́жу	ла́дишь	ла́дить	<i>agree</i>
гла́жу	гла́дишь	гла́дить	<i>stroke</i>
ви́жу	ви́дишь	ви́дѣть	<i>see</i>
си́жу	си́дишь	си́дѣть	<i>sit</i>
вож́у	во́дишь	во́дѣть	<i>lead</i>
хож́у	хо́дишь	хо́дить	<i>go (sc. on foot)</i>
гож́усь (cf. § 100)	годи́шься	годи́ться	<i>be of use</i>
горж́усь ( „ )	гори́шься	гори́ться	<i>be proud</i>
гляж́у	гя́дишь	гя́дѣть	<i>look</i>

ж + (= г +)

леж́у	лежи́шь	лежа́ть	<i>lie</i>
дрож́у	дрожи́шь	дрожáть	<i>tremble</i>
держ́у	держи́шь	держа́ть	<i>keep, hold</i>
—	бѣжи́шь (cf. § 89)	бѣжа́ть	<i>run</i>

(з + becomes ж  
in 1st pers.  
sing.)

з +

ла́жу	ла́зишь	ла́зить	<i>clamber</i>
вож́у	во́зишь	во́зить	<i>convey</i>

(к + becomes ч)

л +

велю́	вели́шь	велѣ́ть	<i>command</i>
болѣ́ть	боля́ть (imper- sonal)	болѣ́ть	<i>ache</i>

молю́сь (cf. § 100) моли́шься

моли́ться

*pray*

м +

шумлю́	шуми́шь	шумѣ́ть	<i>make a noise</i>
--------	---------	---------	---------------------

н +

вино́у	вини́шь	виня́ть	<i>blame</i>
гона́ю	го́нишь	гна́ть	<i>chase</i>

п +

сплю́	спи́шь	спáть	<i>sleep</i>
терплю́	терпи́шь	терпѣ́ть	<i>endure</i>
тороплю́сь	торопи́шься	торопи́ться	<i>hurry</i>

(cf. § 100)

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
<b>p +</b>			
говору́	говори́шь	говори́ть	<i>speaK, say</i>
гору́	гори́шь	гори́ть	<i>burn (intrans.)</i>
смотру́	смотри́шь	смотре́ть	<i>look (at)</i>
куру́	кури́шь	кури́ть	<i>smoke</i>
(с + becomes ш in 1st pers. sing.)	<b>c +</b>		
кра́шу	кра́сишь	кра́сить	<i>paint (sc. walls)</i>
вишу́	виси́шь	весе́ть	<i>hang (intrans.)</i>
ношу́	но́сишь	носе́ть	<i>wear, carry</i>
(т + becomes ч or щ in 1st pers. sing.)	<b>t +</b>		
плачу́	пла́тишь <sup>1</sup>	пла́тить	<i>pay</i>
лечу́	лети́шь	лети́ть	<i>fly</i>
верчу́	вэрти́шь	верте́ть	<i>turn, twist</i>
блещу́	блести́шь	блесте́ть	<i>shine</i>
—	хоти́мъ, &c. (cf. § 89)	хоте́ть	<i>wish</i>
пушу́	пу́стишь	пусти́ть	<i>allow, let go</i>
-сѣщу́ <sup>2</sup>	-сѣти́шь F	-сѣти́ть	<i>(visit)</i>
(x + becomes ш) ч + (= к +)			
кричу́	кричи́шь	крича́ть	<i>shout</i>
молчу́	молчи́шь	молча́ть	<i>be silent</i>
учу́ <sup>3</sup>	учи́шь	учи́ть	<i>teach</i>
ш + (= х +)			
слышу́	слы́шишь	слы́шать	<i>hear</i>
	and very many others.		
<b>o +</b>			
бою́сь (cf. § 100)	бойи́шься	бойте́ся	<i>fear</i>
стою́	стои́шь	стои́ть	<i>cost, be worth</i>
стою́	стои́шь	стои́ть	<i>stand</i>

<sup>1</sup> N.B. The а in all the persons of the present of this verb except the 1st sing. is usually pronounced like accented о.

<sup>2</sup> посѣтить = *to visit*.

<sup>3</sup> The reflexive учиться = *to learn*.

## § 80.

## Irregular Verbs.

These are not really irregular at all, but merely the remains of an old conjugation.

3rd sing. есть = *is*

3rd plur. суть = *are*

are all that is left of the present of the verb БЫТЬ = *to be* (cf. §§ 81, 112).

ЪМЪ = *I eat, I am eating*

(Inf. ЪСТЬ)

Sing.	1	ЪМЪ	Plur.	1	ЪДИМЪ
	2	ЪШЬ		2	ЪДИТЕ
	3	ЪСТЬ		3	ЪДЯТЪ

N.B. For the 2nd sing. and plur. кѹшати is more often used.

ДАМЪ = *I shall give*

(Inf. ДАТЬ)

Sing.	1	ДАМЪ	Plur.	1	ДАДИМЪ
	2	ДАШЬ		2	ДАДИТЕ
	3	ДАСТЬ		3	ДАДУТЪ

[ВѢМЪ = *I know*, obsolete except in the phrase Богъ вѣсть = *God knows*, still sometimes used; a part, the imperative sing., still survives in the very common conjunction вѣдь = *for*, equivalent to the French *donc* or *mais voyons*.]

The following two verbs are partly irregular, and as they are very common deserve special attention :

БѢГҪҮ = *I am running*

(Inf. БѢЖАТЬ)

Sing.	1	БѢГҪҮ
	2	БѢЖИШЬ
	3	БѢЖИТЪ

Plur.	1	БѢЖИМЪ
	2	БѢЖИТЕ
	3	БѢГУТЪ

ХОЧҪҮ = *I want, wish*

(Inf. ХОТѢТЬ)

1	ХОЧҪҮ
2	ХОЧЕШЬ
3	ХОЧЕТЪ

1	ХОТИМЪ
2	ХОТИТЕ
3	ХОТЯТЪ

The very common present

Sing.	1	ѣду = <i>I am going</i> (sc. on horseback or in
	2.	ѣдешь any form of conveyance but
	3	ѣдетъ not on foot)
Plur.	1	ѣдемъ
	2	ѣдете
	3	ѣдутъ

has an infinitive ѣхать.

молѡтъ = *to grind*, през. мелю, мелешь, may also be classed as irregular.

### § 90.

### The Past.

As mentioned on p. 146 the past in Russian is a tense only in name. In reality it is a past participle active which formerly was used with the help of the present of the verb *быть* = *to be*, as a compound perfect tense like the German *ich bin gewesen*. When this present became obsolete the past participle came to be used alone as the past tense and is now not felt to be a participle at all. It is formed from the infinitive, the general rule being to cut off the last two letters (-ть or -ти) and substitute:

-ть for the masc. sing.	} all three persons
-ла „ fem. sing.	
-ло „ neut. sing.	
and -ти „ masc. fem. and neut. plur.	all three persons.

In the singular it must always agree in gender with the subject of the sentence, whatever person it be, except, of course, that the neuter sing. in -ло is only used for the 3rd pers. sing.

The personal pronouns must be prefixed as required, e. g. я, ты, онъ, она, оно for the sing., according to gender, and мы, вы, они, онѣ for the plur., but they are often omitted.

There is absolutely no difficulty in forming the past from any verb the infinitive of which ends in

-ать, -ять, -ѣть, -ить, or -отъ.

This includes all the verbs in class II and most of those in class I. The only difficulty is in the accent. This sometimes falls on the ending and sometimes not; it is best learnt by observation and practice.

Examples are given of the pasts of verbs in class II, and of those of class I whose infinitives end as indicated above :

1, 2, 3 Sing.	1, 2, 3 Plur.	Inf.
М. знать	зна́ли	знать = <i>know</i>
Ф. зна́ла		
Н. зна́ло		
М. смѣялся	смѣя́лись	смѣя́ться = <i>laugh</i>
Ф. смѣя́лась		
Н. смѣя́лось		
М. ви́дѣть	ви́дѣли	ви́дѣть = <i>see</i>
Ф. ви́дѣла		
Н. ви́дѣло		
М. мы́ть	мы́ли	мыть = <i>wash (trans.)</i>
Ф. мы́ла		
Н. мы́ло		
М. пи́ть	пи́ли	пи́ть = <i>drink</i>
Ф. пи́ла		
Н. пи́ло		
М. боро́лся	боро́лись	боро́ться = <i>struggle</i>
Ф. боро́лась		
Н. боро́лось		

In the case of the verbs of class I, all those of which the infinitive ends in -ать, -ять, -ѣть, -ыть, or -ить are formed in exactly the same way as those just mentioned, e.g. ста́ть, ста́ла, ста́ло, ста́ли; бы́ть, бы́ли, бы́ло, бы́ли; дѣ́ть, дѣ́ла, дѣ́ло, дѣ́ли; жи́ть, жи́ла, жи́ло, жи́ли, from ста́ть, дѣ́ть, бы́ть, and жи́ть. In the case of the others, i.e. of those the stem of which ends in a consonant and the infinitive in -ти, -зти, -зть, -сти, -сть, -еть, -ѣчь, -ечь, -ичь, -очь, -ячь, and those with infinitives in -нуть, the formation of the past is a little more difficult.

One reason is that the infinitive sometimes disguises the end of the stem, and it is to the stem (ending in a consonant) that the endings of the past have to be added, and another is that some of the stems undergo phonetic changes when followed by the -ть of the past. The stem can always be found in the 2nd sing. of the present by cutting off the personal endings -ешь or -нешь.

Stems ending in -с, -з, -к, -г, -б, -п lose the -ль of the masculine singular past (those in -п being formed from the infinitive stem, e.g. from *теп-* and not from *тр-*), e.g.

М. не́сь	}	несли́	нести́ = <i>carry</i>
Ф. несла́			
Н. несло́			
М. ве́зь	}	везли́	везти́ = <i>convey</i>
Ф. везла́			
Н. везло́			
М. те́кь	}	текли́	течь = <i>flow</i>
Ф. текла́			
Н. текло́			
М. могъ	}	могли́	мочь = <i>be able</i>
Ф. могла́			
Н. могло́			
М. гре́бь	}	гребли́	гrestí = <i>row</i>
Ф. гребла́			
Н. гребло́			
М. те́рь	}	те́рли	тере́ть = <i>rub</i>
Ф. те́рла			
Н. те́рло			

Stems ending in -д, -т lose these consonants before all the endings beginning with л, e.g.

М. ве́ть	}	вели́	вести́ = <i>lead</i>
Ф. вела́			
Н. вело́			
М. ме́ть	}	мели́	мести́ = <i>sweep</i>
Ф. мела́			
Н. мелó			

Of the verbs whose infinitives end in -нуть, the majority form their past in the ordinary way, e.g.<sup>1</sup>

М. трону́ть	}	тронули́	трону́ть = <i>touch</i>
Ф. тронула́			
Н. тронуло́			

<sup>1</sup> N.B. двину́ть when compounded with the preposition, воз-, inserts again the г of its stem, viz. *воздвигну́ть* = *to erect*, the past of which is *воздвигъ*, *воздвигла*, &c.; but not when compounded with other prepositions. *Исчезну́ть* = *to disappear* has both *исчезъ* and *исчезну́ль*.

but those verbs of this class which have so-called inchoative meaning, i. e. denote a process of any sort, lose the syllable -н- and add the terminations direct to the real stem (after stems ending in -х, -с, -к, -з the -лъ falls off), e.g.<sup>1</sup>

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
M.	сохъ	сохли	сохнуть = <i>become dry</i>
F.	сохла		
N.	сохло		
M.	кисъ	кисли	киснуть = <i>grow sour</i>
F.	кисла		
N.	кисло		
M.	мокъ	мокли	мокнуть = <i>grow wet</i>
F.	мокла		
N.	мокло		
M.	стылъ	стыли	стынуть = <i>grow cold</i>
F.	стыла		
N.	стыло		

The pasts of the following verbs of class I must be mentioned individually, being somewhat unexpected; to them are added those of the irregular verbs:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
M.	-чѣтъ	-чили	-честъ = ( <i>read</i> )
F.	-чѣла		
N.	-чѣло		
M.	сѣлъ	сѣли	сѣсть = <i>sit down</i>
F.	сѣла		
N.	сѣло		

<sup>1</sup> гибнуть = *to perish*, has an alternative form гинуть; the past of the first is either гибъ, гибла, or гибнущъ, &c., that of the second гинущъ, &c., and in compounds, e.g. погибнуть, only погибъ, погибла, &c. Several other verbs of this category have both forms of past, but all have the shorter form as given above.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
М. росъ } Ф. росла } Н. росло }	росли	расти = <i>grow</i>
М. клялъ } Ф. кляла } Н. кляло }	кляли	клясть = <i>swear</i>
М. лёгъ } Ф. легла } Н. легло }	легли	лечь = <i>lie down</i>
М. жёгъ } Ф. жгла } Н. жгло }	жгли	жечь = <i>burn (trans.)</i>
М. -шибъ } Ф. -шибла } Н. -шибло }	-шибли	-шибѣть = ( <i>hit</i> )
М. ѣлъ } Ф. ѣла } Н. ѣло }	ѣли	ѣсть = <i>eat</i>
М. даъ } Ф. дала } Н. дало }	дали	дать = <i>give</i>
М. шёлъ } Ф. шла } Н. шло }	шли	идти = <i>go</i>

Notice especially

хотѣть	наз	хотѣть	хотѣла	хотѣло
		хотѣли		
бѣжѣть	„	бѣжѣть	бѣжѣла	бѣжѣло
		бѣжѣли		
ѣхѣть	„	ѣхѣть	ѣхѣла	ѣхѣло
		ѣхѣли		
быть	„	быть	была	было
		были		
молотъ	„	молотъ	молотѣла	молотѣло
		молотѣли		



## § 91.

## The Future.

The future in form is exactly the same as the present, and has no special endings of its own. It is a peculiarity of Russian that the present tenses of all the so-called perfective verbs have future meaning. This will be explained amply in §§ 101, 104.

The future can also be formed by using the form *б́уду, б́удешь* = *I shall be, thou wilt be*, &c. (of the verb *быть* = *to be*), together with the infinitive of any of the so-called imperfective verbs. The difference in meaning between these two forms of the future will be explained in § 104.

## § 92.

## The Conditional.

This is formed by adding the particle *бы* (often contracted to *бъ*) to the past of any verb.

This particle is really a part of the verb *быть* = *to be*, which originally possessed a complete conditional tense, long since quite obsolete. This particle *бы* can be placed before or after the verb, the only rule being that as it is an enclitic it cannot begin a sentence, and therefore if placed before the verb the personal pronoun which is otherwise often omitted must be used. In meaning the conditional can be either past or future, according to the context.

## Example:

*хотѣлъ-бы* = *I should have liked or I should like* (inf. *хотѣть* = *to wish*).

The particle can either follow the verb thus:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
M.	хотѣлъ-бы	хотѣли-бы
F.	хотѣла-бы	
N.	хотѣло-бы	

all of which forms can of course be preceded by the requisite personal pronouns; or it can precede it, in which case the personal pronouns are essential:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
M.	я бы хотѣлъ	мы } бы хотѣли
	ты бы хотѣлъ	
	онъ бы хотѣлъ	
		вы } они }

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
F.	<div>я бы хотѣла</div> <div>ты бы хотѣла</div> <div>она бы хотѣла</div>	<div>мы</div> <div>вы</div> <div>онѣ</div>
N.	оно́ бы хотѣло	они́ бы хотѣли

## § 93.

## The Imperative.

The endings of the imperative are :

2nd sing.	-и,	-ь
2nd plur.	-ите,	-ьте

The endings -и, -ите are added to the present stems of all those verbs in class I which end in a consonant and have the accent on the ending of the 1st sing. of the present, e.g.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	
иду́	иди́!	} = go!
	иди́те!	
пишú	пиши́	} = write!
	пиши́те	
берегу́	береги́ <sup>1</sup>	} = watch!
	береги́те	

If the accent is not on the ending of the 1st sing., then -ь, -ьте are added, e.g.

бу́ду	бу́дь	} = be!
	бу́дьте	
си́ду	ся́дь	} = sit down!
	ся́дьте	
пла́чу	пла́чь	} = weep!
	пла́чьте	

If, however, the present stem ends in two consonants, then, although the accent be on the root, the endings -и, -ите are added,<sup>2</sup> e.g.

кри́кну	кри́кни	} shout!
	кри́кните	

<sup>1</sup> The very common reflexive береги́сь, береги́тесь = take care!

<sup>2</sup> But N.B. сы́плю, сы́пь, сы́пьте = scatter!  
and внемлю́, внемли́, внемли́те = heed!

The endings -и, -ите are added to all those present stems which end in a vowel, wherever the accent be, and as a diphthong is formed, the и appears as й, e.g.

дѣлай	}	= <i>do!</i>	пой	}	= <i>sing!</i>
дѣлайте			пойте		
крой	}	= <i>cover!</i>	дай	}	= <i>give!</i>
кройте			дайте		
совѣтуй	}	= <i>advise!</i>			
совѣтуйте					

Notice that the imperatives of the five verbs бить, вить, лить, шить, and шить are somewhat different, viz.:

бей	}	= <i>hit!</i>	пей	}	= <i>drink!</i>
бейте			пейте		

Similarly the verbs of class II take one or the other pair of endings according to where the accent is on the 1st sing. of the present. In the case of these verbs it is important to remember that the stem is to be found in the 2nd sing. of the present, and not always in the 1st, e.g.

спи	}	= <i>sleep!</i>
спи́те		
сиди	}	= <i>sit!</i> (i. e. <i>don't get up</i> )
сиди́те		
слышь	}	= <i>hear!</i>
слы́шьте		
брось	}	= <i>throw!</i> (sc. <i>give over!</i> )
бро́сьте		

The following imperatives are irregular:

from ле́гу ле́жешь, inf. ле́чь

imper.	лягь	}	= <i>lie down!</i>
	ля́те		

from ѣмь ѣшь, inf. ѣсть (кушать is more often used)

imper.	ѣшь	}	= <i>eat!</i>
	ѣ́шьте		

from ѣду ѣдешь, inf. ѣхать

imper.	поѣзжай	}	= <i>start! go! drive!</i>
	поѣзжайте		

N.B. An anomalous 1st plur. of the imperative is often formed colloquially by adding the ending *-re* on to the 1st plur. of the present, e. g.

(по)идёмте = *let us go!*

поговоримте = *let's have a little chat!*

though as a rule the 1st plur. of the present is used alone to express *let us*.

The 3rd sing. and 3rd plur. of the imperative is expressed by using the word *пускай* (= 2nd sing. imperat. from *пускать* = *to let*) or *пусть* (= 2nd sing. imperat. from *пустить* = *to let*), followed by the *perfective* present, e. g.

пускай придёт = *let him come*

пускай стоят = *let them stand*

пусть скажет = *let him tell*.

For the use of the imperative in conditional clauses cf. § 106.

## § 94.

### The Infinitive.

The infinitive ends in *-ть*, *-чь*, *-ти*, or *-чи*, preceded by various vowels and consonants; when the accent rests on the infinitive ending itself (which it does in a small minority of all the Russian verbs) then the ending is *-ти* (*-чи*), otherwise it is *-ть* (*-чь*).

As examples of all possible varieties of infinitives have been given in § 87, it is unnecessary to repeat them here.

## § 95.

### The Gerund.

The present gerund is in most cases formed from the third person plural of the present by cutting off the last three letters, viz. *-ють*, *-утъ*, or *-ятъ* and adding *-я*, e. g.

неся́ = *carrying* from несу́тъ

чита́я = *reading* „ читаю́тъ

говори́ = *speaking* „ говори́тъ

сидя́ = *sitting* „ сидя́тъ

стоя́ = *standing* „ стоя́тъ

глядя́ = *looking* „ глядя́тъ.

The following are formed somewhat irregularly :

дава́я = *giving* from даю́тъ

-знава́я = *recognizing* „ -знаю́тъ

-става́я = *standing* „ -стаю́тъ.

N.B. The present gerund from хотѣть = *they wish* has acquired the meaning *although* and is almost always used as a conjunction in this sense.

When the 3rd plural of the present ends in -уть or -ать preceded by ж, ч, ш, or щ then the present gerund ends not in -я, but in -а, e.g.

плача = <i>weeping</i>	from	плачутъ
ища = <i>seeking</i>	„	ищутъ
молча = <i>being silent</i> <sup>1</sup>	„	молчатъ
лежа = <i>lying down</i>	„	лежатъ

There is another form of the present gerund which is formed by cutting off the last two letters of the 3rd pl. present (-тъ) and adding -чи. This form is very commonly used by the peasants and in popular poetry, but in literature only a few verbs have it; from the verb быть = *to be*, it is, however, the only form of the gerund ever used, viz.:

бѣдучи, from бѣдутъ.

The past gerund is formed from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense' by cutting off -тъ and adding -въ or -вши, e.g.

бывъ	from	былъ
читавъ or	}	„ читалъ
читавши		
ѣвши	„	ѣлъ.

Those pasts which lose the -тъ in the masc. sing. add -ши, e.g.

лѣгши	from	лѣгъ
нёши	„	нёсъ.

Those pasts in which a final -л, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -тъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -ши, e.g.

вѣдши from вѣлъ (inf. вѣстѣ).

Notice especially:

шѣдши from шѣлъ (inf. итѣ).

---

<sup>1</sup> Used adverbially = *in silence*.

## § 96.

## The Participles.

The present participle active is formed, like the present gerund, from the 3rd plural of the present tense by cutting off the last two letters -тъ and adding -щій, -щая, -щее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій, хоро́шая, хоро́шее, q. v.

E. g. from любя́тъ (inf. любить), pres. part. act. любя́щій = *loving*  
from веду́тъ (inf. вести), pres. part. веду́щій = *leading* (sc. to)

from зна́ють (inf. знать), pres. part. зна́ющій = *knowing* (sc. who knows).

It must be noticed that the participle, present in form, of the verb бу́ду = *I shall be*, viz. бу́дущій, has imperfective future meaning, and commonly means *next*, or *the next*; the neuter бу́дущее is used substantivally = *the future*.

§ 97. The past participle active is formed, like the past gerund, from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense', by cutting off -лъ and adding -вшій, -вшая, -вшее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій.

E. g. from любя́тъ (inf. любить), past part. любя́вшій, &c. = *having loved*

from ѣлъ (inf. ѣсть), past part. ѣвшій, &c. = *having eaten*

from бы́лъ (inf. быть), past part. бы́вшій which is always used to express *former* or *late* (though, N.B., not *the late*, which is покойный). Those pasts which lose the -лъ in the masc. sing. add -шій, -шая, -шее.

E. g. from у́меръ (inf. умереть), past part. у́мершій, &c. = *having died, dead*.

Those parts in which a final -д, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -лъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -шій, &c.

E. g. from ве́лъ (inf. вести), past part. ве́дшій, &c. = *having led*

from шѣ́лъ (inf. итти), past part. шѣ́дшій, &c. = *having gone*

from па́лъ (inf. пасть) there are two forms: па́дшій and па́вшій = *having fallen*.

§ 98. The present participle passive is formed from the 1st plur. of the present tense, the final -мъ of which is turned into -мый, -мая, -мое, the word thus formed being declined like бы́лый; e. g. from чита́емъ (inf. читать), pres. part. pass. чита́емый, &c.; from ви́димъ (inf. видеть), pres. part. pass. ви́димый, &c.; from любя́мъ (inf. любить), pres. part. pass. любя́мый, &c. (= *favourite*).

A few verbs of class I with stems ending in consonants form the present participle passive irregularly in -омый, &c.

E. g. from несутъ (inf. нести), pres. part. pass. несомый, &c.

from ведемъ (inf. вести), pres. part. pass. ведомый, &c.

from искать = *to seek*, pres. part. pass. искомый, &c.

§ 99. The past participle passive is formed from the infinitive in two different ways. One is by cutting off the -ть of the infinitive and adding -тъ, -на, -но for the short or predicative and -(н)ый, -(н)ая, -(н)ое for the long or attributive form, which word is then declined like бѣлый.

E. g. from сдѣлать = *to make*

past part. pass. сдѣлать, -на, -но; -ны; сдѣланный, &c.

from потерять = *to lose*

past part. pass. потерявъ, -на, -но; -ны; потерянный, &c.

from дать = *to give*

past part. pass. давъ, дана, дано; даны; данный, &c.

from осмотрѣть = *to inspect*

past part. pass. осмотрѣвъ, -на, -но; -ны; осмотрѣнный, &c.

Verbs of Class II with inf. in -ить form the past part. pass. as follows:

from обвинить = *to accuse*

past part. pass. обвинивъ, -на, -но; -ны; обвиненный, &c.

from ужалить = *to sting*

past part. pass. ужалевъ, -на, -но; -ны; ужаленный

from ранить = *to wound*

past part. pass. раневъ, -на, -но; -ны; раненый

from учить = *to teach*

past part. pass. (short form not used) учивъ (= *learned, a savant*).

The past participle passive of those verbs of class II, the 1st person sing. of the present of which is affected by the following palatal vowel (cf. § 87), is formed from the 1st person sing. of the present in the following way:

from заплатить = *to pay*

1st sing. pres. заплачу (т + ю = чу)

past part. pass. заплаченный (pronounced заплаченный)

from садить = *to set, plant*

1st sing. pres. посажу (д + ю = жу)

past part. pass. посаженный

from *скосить* = *to mow*  
 1st sing. pres. *скошу* (с + ю = шу)  
 past part. pass. *скошенный*

from *купить* = *to buy*  
 1st sing. pres. *куплю*  
 past part. pass. *купленный*.

Notice especially :

from *обидеть* = *to offend*  
 past part. pass. *обиденный, &c.*

A few verbs of this class which have presents in -*щу* form their past participles passive with *щ*.

E. g. from *обратить* = *to turn*  
 past part. pass. *обращенный*  
 from *просвѣтить* = *to enlighten*  
 past part. pass. *просвѣщенный*  
 from *посѣтить* = *to visit*  
 past part. pass. *посѣщенный*  
 and from *отмстить* = *to avenge oneself*  
 past part. pass. *отомщенный*.

Many verbs of class I whose stems end in a consonant form their past participles passive from the second person sing., cutting off the ending -*ешь* and adding -*енъ*, &c., for the predicative, -*енный*, &c., for the attributive form.

E. g. from *вести* = *to lead*  
 2nd sing. pres. *ведешь*  
 past part. pass. *веденный*  
*прочсть* = *to read through*  
 2nd sing. pres. *прочтешь*  
 past part. pass. *прочтенный*  
*стричь* = *to shear, cut (hair)*  
 2nd sing. pres. *стрижешь*  
 past part. pass. *стриженный*  
*жечь* = *to burn (trans.)*  
 2nd sing. pres. *жжешь*  
 past part. pass. *жженный*  
 and others.



The other way of forming the past participle passive is by cutting off the *-ь* of the infinitive and adding *-ъ, -а, -о* for the short or predicative, and *-ый, -ая, -ое* for the long or attributive form. This form is by far the less common of the two.

	Е. g. from	мыть = <i>to wash</i>
past part. pass.	мытый, &c.	
	from	бить = <i>to hit</i>
past part. pass.	битый, &c.	
	from	проклясть = <i>to curse</i>
past part. pass.	проклятый, &c.	
	from	грѣть = <i>to heat</i>
past part. pass.	грѣтый, &c.	
	from	тереть = <i>to rub</i>
past part. pass.	тёртый, &c.	
	from	заперѣть = <i>to shut (e. g. a building)</i>
past part. pass.	запертый, &c.	

Other common verbs which form their past participles passive in this way are :

начать = <i>to begin</i>	жать = <i>to reap</i>
нажить = <i>to earn</i>	мять = <i>to crush</i>
занять = <i>to occupy, to borrow</i>	одѣть = <i>to dress</i>
покрыть = <i>to cover</i>	пѣть = <i>to sing</i>
жать = <i>to press</i>	брить = <i>to shave</i>

and all verbs in *-нуть*,

е. g. from	протянуть = <i>to stretch forth</i>
past part. pass.	протянутый, &c.

## § 100.

### The Reflexive Verb.

\* This is formed by the addition of *-ся* (or *-сь*), a reduced form of the reflexive pronoun *себя*, to all parts of the verb, as follows :

купаться = *to bathe* (imperfective and intransitive).

#### Present.

я	купаюсь
ты	купаешься
онъ, она, оно	купается
мы	купаемся
вы	купаетесь
они, онѣ	купаются

*Past.*

	M. купался	} Plur. купались
Sing.	F. купалась	
	N. купалось	

*Future.*

буду купаться, &c.

*Conditional.*

купался-бы, &c.

*Imperative.*

купайся  
купайтесь

*Present Gerund.*

купаясь

*Past Gerund.*

купавшись

*Present Participle.*

купающийся, &c.

*Past Participle.*

купавшийся, &c.

Ся is added whenever the part of the verb ends in a consonant or in *ь* or *й*; *сь* when it ends in a vowel. Ся is added in the participles throughout, whether preceded by vowel or consonant.

## § 101.

## The uses of the Verb.

In order to use the verb correctly it is necessary to know not only the way it is conjugated but also what aspects it possesses.

This is where the real difficulty begins. It will have been noticed that, compared with other languages, Russian possesses very few tenses in the grammatical sense of the word; this want is supplied by the aspects.

The aspects are different forms of the same verb; the same verb acquires a different meaning according to its aspect. The aspects are formed by altering the verb itself either by prefixing some preposition or by lengthening or otherwise altering the root itself; the personal endings remain unaltered and each aspect of the verb has a more or less complete set of forms, i.e. present, imperative, infinitive, &c.

There are two main divisions of the aspects of the Russian verb :

1. imperfective
- and 2. perfective.

The verbs themselves are called imperfective or perfective according to the aspect in which they are used in any particular case, i.e. a verb is said to be imperfective, or is said to be used in the imperfective aspect, and every verb must necessarily belong

to one or the other division, i.e. must be either imperfective or perfective.

The difference in meaning between these two aspects is that when any one uses an imperfective verb the action described by that verb is in the mind's eye of the speaker **INCOMPLETE**, or, if in the past, must have been of uncertain duration.

When, on the other hand, any one uses a perfective verb, then the action is either **COMPLETE** or, if in the future, the speaker must have its completion in his mind's eye.

In English there is of course also variety of aspects, but it is expressed not by altering the verb itself but by the use of auxiliary verbs or adverbs; for instance, *I go*; *I am going*, *I used to go*, *I often go*, *I was going* are imperfective, whereas *I went*, *I am gone*, *I shall go* are perfective.

The majority of simple Russian verbs, i.e. those which are not compounded with any preposition, are imperfective, but from the fact that a given verb is compounded with a preposition it by no means follows that that verb is perfective. Nevertheless it is true that the commonest way of turning an imperfective into a perfective verb is by prefixing to it a preposition.\*

Now the curious thing is that when a preposition is used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb, that preposition loses its original meaning.

Further, while there is always one preposition in particular which when prefixed to a verb both makes the verb perfective and loses its own original meaning, on the other hand, all the other prepositions when prefixed to the same verb both make it perfective and retain their original meaning, thus altering the meaning of the verb as well.

The difficulty is to know which is the particular preposition in each case which merely makes a given verb perfective, and as it is sometimes one preposition and sometimes another, the only thing for the beginner to do is to make a list of the commonest verbs and learn them by heart, putting down the simple (imperfective) verb and the form of the same verb compounded with that preposition which makes the verb perfective, while allowing the verb to retain its meaning but losing its own.

One of the prepositions most frequently used for transforming an imperfective into a perfective verb is *no*, which in the process

quite loses its meaning of *along* or *over*, and merely defines the space of time during which the action takes place, e.g.

смотре́ть (imperfective) = *to look*

посмотре́ть (perfective) = *to give a look*.

It has already been indicated that not all simple verbs are imperfective and conversely that not all verbs compounded with prepositions are perfective; these categories of verbs will be examined later.

There follow now paradigms of one or two very common verbs in couples, first the simple (imperfective) and then the compound (perfective) verb. It will be noticed that not both aspects of the same verb have an equally complete paradigm. This, as will be explained, is in the nature of things, and is invariably the case.

First the paradigms are given, then remarks on the use of the various parts of the two aspects :

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{дѣлать} \\ \text{сдѣлать}^1 \end{array} \right\} = \text{to do, to make}$$

	<i>Imperfective.</i>	<i>Perfective.</i>
present	дѣлаю	— (cf. § 102)
past	дѣлать	сдѣлалъ
future	буду дѣлать.	сдѣлаю
conditional	дѣлать-бы	сдѣлать-бы
imperative	дѣлай	сдѣлай
infinitive	дѣлать	сдѣлать
pres. ger.	дѣлая	—
past ger.	дѣлавъ	сдѣлавъ
pres. part. act.	дѣлающій	—
past part. act.	дѣлавшій	сдѣлавшій
pres. part. pass.	дѣлаемый	—
past part. pass.	дѣланный	сдѣланный

<sup>1</sup> = съ + дѣлать.

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{писать} \\ \text{на + ,,} \end{array} \right\} = \text{to write}$$

	<i>Imperfective.</i>	<i>Perfective.</i>
present	пишú	— (cf. § 102)
past	писа́лъ	написа́лъ
future	буду писа́ть	напишú
conditional	писа́лъ-бы	написа́лъ-бы
imperative	пиши́	напиши́
infinitive	писа́ть	написа́ть
pres. ger.	—	—
past ger.	писа́въ	написа́въ
pres. part. act.	пи́шущий	—
past part. act.	писа́вший	написа́вший
pres. part. pass.	—	—
past part. pass.	пи́санный	напи́санный

### § 102. The Present (imperfective).

Russian possesses only one present, while English\* has two: я пишú = (1) *I write* (sc. *it is my custom or profession to write*) and = (2) *I am writing* (sc. *at this moment*). Both these meanings are of course imperfective; when one says я пишú = *I write*, or я пишú = *I am writing*, the speaker does not naturally envisage the termination of his activity. An example of the use of the imperfective present:

что вы де́лаете? = *what are you doing?*

я пишú писа́мо = *I am writing a letter.*

The imperfective present is frequently used in Russian illogically, instead of the future, as in English; e. g. in telegrams, letters, &c.:

при́ѣзжаю за́втра = *I am arriving to-morrow* (при́ѣзжаю is an imperfective present).

The historic present is often used in narration instead of the past.

### Use of the Present in subordinate sentences.

The imperfective present is used in all cases where it is used in English; after verbs of *declaring, feeling, &c.* The subordinate sentence is always introduced by *что*, e. g.

я говорю, что онъ врётъ = *I say that he is lying*

я думаю, что онъ любитъ её = *I think he loves her*

ты знаешь, что я тебя люблю = *thou knowest that I love thee.*

In this connexion it should be noticed that after the verb *видѣть* the so-called paratactic construction is very common in Russian; this is especially frequent in narration. By omitting the *что* it gives the impression of two principal sentences instead of a principal and a subordinate sentence, e. g.

видѣть — летѣть къ нимъ птица = *they see a bird flying towards them* (lit. *they see — a bird is flying towards them*).

Russian is much stricter in the correct expression of time, however, and the present is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences where in English we use the past although we mean the present, e. g.

*I did not know that this was so* = я не зналъ, что это такъ (lit. *I did not know that this [is] so*)

*he told me that he was writing a book* = онъ сказалъ мнѣ, что пишетъ книгу (lit. = *he told me that he is writing a book*)

*she thought he loved her* = она думала, что онъ её любитъ (lit. *she thought he loves her*)

and in these cases it would be a very bad mistake to use the past in the subordinate clause.

In conditional clauses the imperfective present is used whenever the condition refers to the actual present; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *если* = *if* (sometimes by *если*), and the antithesis in the principal sentence is often expressed by the pronoun *то* used adverbially, e. g.

если вы хотите, то скажите ему = *if you wish, then tell him*

сдѣлайте это для ней, если вы её любите = *do this for her if you love her.*

When the condition refers to the future the perfective present (= perfective future, q.v.) is usual, though in the cases of some

verbs the imperfective present is used illogically for the future, as in English, e. g.

если можете, то приходите завтра = *if you can, then come to-morrow.*

In concessive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English; the subordinate sentence is introduced by хотя = *although* (sometimes reduced to хоть), но смотря на то, что = *in spite of the fact that*, and the antithesis in the principal sentence is expressed by но = *but*, однако = *nevertheless*, всётаки = *all the same*, or by the enclitic -таки = *yet*,

хотя всё говоритъ что это правда, я имъ всётаки не вѣрю = *although all say that this is true (the truth), all the same I don't believe them.*

In relative clauses—*whoever*, in sentences where the present is necessary, is expressed by the simple relative, e. g.

кто говоритъ это, врётъ = *whoever says this, lies.*

*Whoever, whatever, and however* are also expressed by the relative with the negative particle ни, which however does not make the sentence negative,

что онъ ни дѣлаетъ, всё ему удаётся = *whatever he does, he succeeds in everything*

какъ вы ни стараетесь, вы не сумеете это сдѣлать = *however much you try you will not be able to do this.*

If the relative sentence is negative the ordinary negative particle не is used and not ни,

кто не знаетъ этого человека, тотъ не можетъ понять почему его такъ уважаютъ = *whoever does not know this man, cannot understand why people respect him so.*

In causal clauses the imperfective present is very common; the subordinate clause is introduced by потому, что = *because* or такъ какъ = *since* (in letter-writing these are often abbreviated to п. т. ч. and т. к.),

она цѣлуетъ его по тому, что она его любитъ = *she kisses him because she loves him*

такъ какъ вы не хотите сказать мнѣ, я спрошу его = *since you do not wish to tell me, I'll ask him.*

In consecutive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English ; the subordinate sentence is introduced by что, e. g.

онъ такъ боленъ, что я не могу его оставить = *he is so ill that I cannot leave him.*

In temporal clauses the subordinate sentences are introduced by когда = *when* (often answered by тогда = *then*), пока = *while*, между тѣмъ какъ, въ то время какъ = *while*,

когда я пишу, я не люблю чтобы со мной говорили = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me*

сидите со мной пока я одѣваюсь = *sit with me while I am dressing.*

In comparative clauses the subordinate sentence is introduced by какъ = *how* answered by такъ, or такъ и = *thus*

какъ думаетъ, такъ и говорить = *as he thinks, thus (too) he speaks.*

### The Present (perfective).

It is one of the greatest peculiarities of the Russian verb that the formal present of every perfective verb has future meaning, so that while every perfective verb has a tense which is present in form, it is in meaning always a definite future (cf. § 104).

### § 103. The Past (imperfective).

This is the equivalent of the imperfect, and its use connotes that the action was more or less habitual or that the period of time during which it lasted is in the mind's eye of the speaker indefinite.

я писалъ = *I was writing, or I used to write.*

Examples of the use of this tense :

что вы дѣлали когда я вошёлъ въ комнату ? = *what were you doing when I entered the room ?*

я писалъ письмо = *I was writing a letter*

прежде она писала много = *formerly she used to write a lot.*

The use of the imperfective past in subordinate sentences is common in temporal, concessive, and comparative clauses, but presents no difficulties.

It is important to remember that in Russian the present is often used in a subordinate sentence where we use the past.

For the use of бывало with the perfective present (= perfective future), cf. § 104.



## The Past (perfective).

This is the equivalent of the aorist and its use connotes that the action is completed; it can never be used for any action that is habitual, frequentative, or indefinite:

я написалъ = *I wrote, or I have written, or I had written.*

Examples of the use of this tense:

я сдѣлать это нарочно = *I did this on purpose*

я написалъ моему отцу письмо = *I have written your father a letter*

что вы сдѣлали? = *what have you done?*

There is one curious use of the perfective past which, owing to its prevalence and peculiarity, deserves special mention. The perfective past of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of *быть*, viz. *было*, to convey the meaning that an action was on the point of being completed and was only just prevented; it is the Russian way of saying *was on the point of, was just about to . . .*, e.g.

онъ начать было приподниматься на постѣли чтобъ встать . . . = *he was on the point of beginning to raise himself on the bed, in order to get up (when some one addressed him and he stopped where he was)*

не дожидаясь отвѣта онъ пошелъ было вонъ = *without waiting for an answer he was just going to leave the room (when he was stopped)*

Алѣша сталъ было отъ ликера отказываться = *Alesha was about to refuse the liqueur*

я было сказать ему, а онъ уже поѣхалъ = *I was just going to tell him, but he had already gone.*

Although this construction usually implies an unfulfilled intention it is sometimes used when the action was really accomplished, but was interrupted at the very moment of completion.

Another idiomatic construction with much the same meaning is *чуть было не* with the perfective past, e.g.

онъ чуть было не всталъ съ постѣли = *he almost got up from the bed (so. but didn't)*

и чуть было не упалъ = *I very nearly fell.*

This is in fact the usual way of saying *nearly* followed by a verb, as the adverb *nearly* (почти) is almost exclusively used with nouns and adjectives.

**The use of the Imperfective Past where that of the Perfective Past is to be expected.**

This is very common and for the foreigner immensely increases the difficulty of correct expression. It is most frequent in negative sentences; negation of an action seems to the Russian to demand an imperfective verb. E. g.

я не писалъ ему may mean: *I was not writing to him*; but it may also mean, and usually does: *I have not written to him*.

Very common phrases are:

вы мнѣ давно не писали = *you haven't written to me for a long time*

я никогда не видѣлъ его (imperfective) = *I have never seen him*  
(N.B. In Russian two negatives do not make an affirmative)

я не слыжала ея (imperfective) = *I have not heard her* (sc. never).

But where the negation refers to one particular event, the perfective may be used, e. g.

не я это сдѣлать = *it was not I (who) did this*

я не узналъ васъ = *I didn't recognize you*.

In interrogative sentences also, where the question covers a long period of time, the imperfective is also frequently used (-ли is the interrogative particle):

писали-ли вы	} когда-нибудь? = have you ever written, done, seen, heard?
дѣлали-ли вы	
видѣли-ли вы	
слыхали-ли вы	

In general it may be said that in negative and interrogative sentences the imperfective is, in the nature of things, more usual than the perfective aspect.

A most unexpected use of the imperfective past is made in some cases where the action is quite definite and the most obvious aspect to use would seem to be the perfective. These are cases in which the speaker who uses the imperfective instead of the perfective aspect wishes by so doing to give a slightly indefinite tone to what he is saying; by using the imperfective instead of the

perfective he makes a suggestion, as it were, instead of a statement. To the beginner this seems a gross inconsistency, but it is really a very subtle refinement.

For example, one often hears Russians say :

ОНЪ МНѢ ПИСАЛЪ ОБЪ ЭТОМЪ

when one definite letter is referred to and the meaning can only be : *he wrote to me about this*, or *he did write to me*, &c.; in this case the use of the imperfective may connote hostility or incredulity in the mind of the speaker, or it may be merely intentional vagueness.

Another very common instance is :

ОНЪ ГОВОРИЛЪ МНѢ, ЧТО . . . = *he told me, that . . .*

where a perfective verb would be natural ; in this case there is an English equivalent, for we often say : *he was telling me* when we mean *he told me*.

Here is an example from a letter of L. Tolstoi, where he uses two imperfective pasts while referring to two absolutely definite and instantaneous facts ; the only conceivable reason can be that by using the imperfective he makes the item of news conveyed appear less important and thus makes less demand on the interest of his correspondent than if he had proclaimed the fact in the perfective. By using the imperfective he can leave the sentence unfinished without its appearing foolish, while if he had used the perfective his correspondent would have been led to expect some exciting news in the next sentence. This is the passage :

сейчасъ прибѣжалъ ко мнѣ Оболенскій и привозилъ письмо, только что полученное имъ отъ брата Дмитрія . . .

*Obolensky has just come to (see) me and has brought a letter just received by him from (his) brother Demetrius.*

### The use of the Perfective Past as an Imperative.

In the case of two verbs the perfective past is used as an imperative ; these are :

пошёлъ \

пошла

пошло

пошли

поѣхать, &c., fr. inf. поѣхать : *to go (sc. in any way except on foot)*

} fr. inf. пойтѣ = *to go (on foot)* and

It must be noticed that the verb of course agrees with the object addressed, e. g.

пошла собака! = *be gone, be off* (addressing a dog).

### The use of the Perfective Past in subordinate sentences.

The perfective past is used in subordinate sentences after verbs of *declaring*, &c., when the event really refers to the past, e. g.

я уже сказалъ вамъ, что написать письмо = *I have already told you that I have written the letter*

but it is important to remember that whenever the action is still going on, even though the principal sentence is in the perfective past, the verb in the subordinate sentence must be in the present or the future (cf. § 102).

я ему сказалъ, что не люблю его = *I told him that I didn't like him.*

In relative, concessive, temporal, comparative, and consecutive clauses the imperfective and perfective past are of course both common, but its use presents no difficulties; the perfective past is common in temporal clauses beginning with *as soon as* (какъ только), *before* (прежде чѣмъ, передъ тѣмъ какъ), *after* (послѣ того какъ), *hardly* — *when* — (только что — какъ —), *as soon as ever* (чуть), *until* (пока не):

какъ только приѣхалъ, и захворалъ = *as soon as I arrived, I fell ill*  
онъ сдѣлалъ это передъ тѣмъ, какъ я ему написалъ = *he did this before I had written to him*

онъ написалъ это послѣ того, какъ получилъ мое письмо = *he wrote this after he had received my letter*

только что я пришёлъ, какъ онъ умеръ = *hardly had I come, when he died*

ты чуть вошёлъ, я вмигъ узнала = *thou hadst barely entered, I at once recognized [thee].*

### § 104. The Future (imperfective).

The imperfective future presents no difficulties; it is a compound tense and is formed by бѹду (= *I shall be*) and the imperfective infinitive. It is always used when any future action is referred to the completion of which is not envisaged by the speaker.

It must be remembered that it is only the imperfective infinitive which can be used after бѹду; to use a perfective infinitive after

бѹду is one of the worst mistakes a foreigner can make. An example of the tense is given in full:

я	бѹду писать
ты	бѹдешь писать
онъ, она	бѹдетъ писать
мы	бѹдемъ писать
вы	бѹдете писать
они, онѣ	бѹдутъ писать

= *I am going to write* (sc. indefinitely).

An example of the use of the imperfective future :

что вы бѹдете дѣлать послѣ завтрака ? = *what are you going to do after lunch* (= *in the afternoon*) ?

я бѹду писать, читать = *I am going to write, read*

вы бѹдете писать мнѣ ? = *you will write to me?* (sc. *more than once*)

бѹду = *I will*.

Стану, станешь, &c. (from *стать* = *to become, to take up one's stand*), is also used followed by an imperfective infinitive to form this same tense, instead of бѹду, but it is much commoner in the written than in the spoken language. It is particularly common in negative sentences.

The use of the imperfective future in subordinate sentences does not present any difficulties, but cf. § 102.

### The Future (perfective).

This is in form exactly the same as the present, and is in theory the present tense of the perfective aspect, while in fact it always has future meaning. It is used when the completion of any future action is contemplated by the speaker. The use of this tense is at first the most puzzling for the beginner.

#### Examples:

я напишѹ емѹ теперь = *I shall write to him now*

я сдѣлаю это завтра = *I shall do this to-morrow*.

The imperfective present and the perfective future can of course be used together, e. g.

я посмотрѹ, что онъ тамъ дѣлаетъ = *I shall have a look; what he is doing there*

while

я смотрѹ, что онъ дѣлаетъ = *I am watching, what he is doing*.

There is one use of the perfective future which is very idiomatic and requires special notice. The perfective future of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of *бывать* (the imperfective frequentative form of *быть* = *to be*), viz. *бывало*, to convey the idea of a perfective or definite action which used to take place often or customarily in the past:

зайдѣть она́ бывало ко мнѣ чай пить = *she used often to look in on me to have tea* (зайдѣть = *she will look in on*, perfective)

онъ бывало скажетъ мнѣ: 'Принеси стака́н воды' = *he would often say to me: 'Bring me a glass of water.'*

*Бывало* can also be used with the imperfective present to express an imperfective habitual action in the past, but this construction is not so common.

The perfective future is also used in narration like a historic present, e.g.

Татья́на то вздохну́ть, то о́хнеть = *at one moment Tatyana would sigh, at another she would groan.*

It can also be used, illogically, in certain cases where one would expect the imperfective present, e.g.

не разберу́ ничего, всё вздоръ = *I can't make out a word, it's all nonsense* (lit. *I shall not be able to make out*).

#### Use of the Future in subordinate clauses.

The future is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences, where in English we use the past or the verb *would, should*, e.g. after verbs of *declaring*, &c.:

*He said that he would be there, or that he was going to be there* =  
онъ сказа́ть, что бу́детъ тамъ (lit. = *he said that he will be there*)

*I knew that he would do this, or that he was going to do this* =  
я зна́лъ, что онъ это сдѣла́етъ (= *I knew that he will do this*)

*She did not know that I was going to write* = она́ не зна́ла, что я напишу́

&c.

In relative clauses the perfective future is used after *кто ни* = *whoever*, *что ни* = *whatever*:

что бы ни сказа́ете, я вамъ не повѣрю = *whatever you may say, I shall not believe you.*

The use of the perfective future is especially common in temporal clauses with the meaning of the future perfect where we in English illogically use the present, e.g.

напишіте, какъ только приѣдете = *write as soon as you arrive*  
(lit. *shall arrive*)

подумайте хорошенько, передъ тѣмъ какъ сдѣлаете это = *reflect well before you do this* (lit. *will do*)

скажемъ вамъ всё послѣ того, какъ вернёмся = *we shall tell you everything after we return* (lit. *shall return*).

N.B. какъ is often used alone with the meaning *when*. *Until* is usually expressed by пока не, though не is sometimes omitted, e.g.

я не напишѹ, пока не получѹ отъ него письмо = *I shall not write, until I have a letter from him*.

The perfective future is often used in conditional clauses where we use the present illogically:

если онъ сдѣлаетъ это, я закричѹ = *if he does this* (lit. *will do*)  
*I shall scream*.

### § 105. The Conditional (imperfective and perfective).

The conditional, as already explained in § 92, is not a separate tense in form, but is merely compounded of the past and the particle бы. It can be formed from the imperfective as well as from the perfective past, but it is far more commonly formed from the latter.

The peculiarity of the tense from the syntactical point of view is that it can refer to the future as well as to the past, e.g.

я бы сдѣлать = *I should have done, or I should do*

что вы бы написали? = *what would you have written? or what would you write?*

это было-бы невозможно = *that would have been impossible, or that would be impossible*.

#### Other uses of the Conditional.

The conditional is very common in relative sentences beginning with *whoever, whatever*, expressed in Russian by the relative pronouns кто что, followed by the бы of the conditional and the negative particle ни:

кто бы это ни написалъ, я ему скажѹ . . = *whoever wrote this, I shall tell him*

что бы вы ни сделали, ничего не поможетъ = *whatever you do, nothing will help*

что бы это ни стоило, надо это сделать = *whatever it cost, we must do this*

что бы ни случилось, пойдёмъ = *whatever happens, we shall go.*

The conditional is used in unfulfilled conditional sentences, both in the principal and in the subordinate sentences; in the latter it is joined to the word *если* (= *if*) and is usually reduced to *бы*, e.g.

я бы сделать это, еслибы могъ = *I should have done this if I had been able*

еслибы она хотѣла, она бы написала = *if she had wished (to), she would have written.*

But it must be carefully observed that if the condition is still capable of fulfilment either in the present or the past, these tenses are used in Russian and not the conditional, e.g.

если можете, напишите теперь = *if you can, write now*

я буду очень радъ, если вы сделаете это = *I should be very glad if you did this* (lit. = *I shall be very glad if you will do this*).

The conditional is used in final clauses where the subject of the subordinate is not the same as that of the principal sentence; *бы* is always joined to the conjunction *что* which introduces the subordinate sentence, e.g.

я пишу ему, чтобы онъ узналъ правду = *I am writing to him in order that he may learn the truth*

онъ дѣлаетъ это, чтобы мы замѣтили его = *he is doing this in order that we may notice him*

она помогла ему, чтобы онъ потомъ помогъ ей = *she helped him in order that he might later help her.*

The conditional is used in concessive clauses if the sense is hypothetical, e.g.

хотѣ-бы знать, что вы тамъ, я бы не могъ придти = *even though I had known you were there I should not have been able to come.*

The conditional is used after all verbs of wishing, commanding, and praying, both affirmative and negative; the subordinate sentences are introduced by *чтобы* or *чтобъ*, e.g.

я хочу, чтобы онъ это сделалъ = *I wish him to do this* (lit. *I wish that he would do this*)



она́ х́очетъ, что́бы я ей написа́лъ = *she wishes me to write to her*  
 (. . . что́бы я ей писа́лъ would mean *to write more than once, often*)

онъ приказа́лъ, что́бы вы пошлѣ къ нему́ = *he ordered you to go to him*

она́ проси́ла, что́бы мы э́то сдѣла́ли = *she begged us to do this.*

The conditional is often used after verbs of declaring, feeling, and believing when the verb in the principal sentence is negative; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *чтобы* or *что́бы*, e.g.

я не говорю́, что́бы э́то было́ такъ = *I do not say, that this is so*

я не ду́маю, что́бы онъ э́то сдѣла́лъ = *I do not think that he did it*

я не вѣрю, что́бы было́ опа́сно = *I don't believe that it is dangerous*

когда́ я пишу́, я не люблю́ что́бы со мной говори́ли = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me.*

In conversation, however, the present and past are often used instead of the conditional, and when the subordinate sentence refers to the future, then the future only is used, e.g.

я не ду́маю, что́ бу́детъ хо́лодно = *I don't think that it will be cold.*

The conditional, negated, is often used after verbs of fearing (*боя́ться*) expressing a positive fear; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *чтобы* or *какъ-бы*, e.g.

я бою́сь, что́бы вы не простудѣ́лись = *I am afraid that you will catch cold*

я бою́сь, какъ-бы онъ не узнáлъ = *I am afraid he will find out*

though *что* followed by the perfective future can also be used in such cases, and must be if the fear is negative, e.g.

я бою́сь, что́ онъ мнѣ́ не напи́шетъ = *I am afraid that he will not write me.*

The conditional is also used invariably after certain negative expressions, e.g.

невозмо́жно, что́бы э́то было́ пра́вда = *it is impossible that this is true (lit. the truth)*

невѣро́ятно, что́бы онъ написа́лъ мнѣ́ = *it is improbable that he would write me, or that he will write.*

The particle **бы** is sometimes used by itself in certain expressions elliptically, e.g.

**Вотъ-бы хорошо!** = *there, wouldn't that be nice!*

For the use of **бы** with the infinitive cf. § 107.

### § 108. The Imperative (imperfective and perfective).

The imperative is used in Russian as in English. The difference between the imperfective and the perfective imperative is that the former implies a command of a more general nature, while the latter refers to the immediate present, e.g.

**смотри, смотри́те!** = *look out (sc. take care)!*

**посмотри, посмотри́те!** = *look here!*

**слу́шайте меня!** (inf. слу́шать) = *listen to me (sc. take my advice)!*

**послу́шайте!** (inf. послу́шать) = *listen!*

Very often the imperfective imperative is used when it is a question of polite request rather than of a peremptory command; this is especially so in the case of the verb *to give*, inf. дава́ть (imperfective), and да́ть (perfective), e.g.

**дава́йте мнѣ что-нибудь поѣсть!** = *give me something to eat*  
more polite than

**да́йте**, though the latter is often used.

The same holds good of the verb *to hand, to serve*, inf. подава́ть (imperfective), пода́ть (perfective), e.g.

**подава́й(те) обѣ́д!** = *serve the dinner!*

is more polite than

**пода́й(те) мнѣ сче́тъ!** = *give (lit. hand) me the bill!*

The imperatives of the verb *to allow, to let*, inf. пуска́ть (imperfective), пусти́ть (perfective), followed by the 3rd sing. of the perfective future, are used to express the 3rd sing. of the imperative (cf. § 93), e.g.

**пусть он пуска́й ска́жетъ вамъ** = *let him tell you*

**пу́скай сдѣла́етъ** = *let him do it*

**пу́скай напи́шетъ** = *let him write.*

The imperative *давай(те)* is very commonly used colloquially with the meaning *let's*, e. g.

*давай(те) играть въ карты!* = *let's have a game of cards!*

to which the answer usually is:

*давай(те)* = [*yes*] *let's!*

The imperative *дай(те)* is often used with the meaning *let*, e. g.

*дай(те) мнѣ говорить!* = *let me speak.*

In prohibitions the imperfective is used, e. g.

*не давай(те) ей говорить!* = *don't let her speak.*

In negative commands the imperfective imperative is almost invariably used, even when the prohibition only covers a definite act or period of time, e. g.

*не пишите ему!* = *don't write to him!* (= either *now*, or in *future*)

*не смотрите!* = *don't look!*

*не говорите ему!* = *don't tell him!*

*не говорите!* = *don't talk about it!*

for the use of the infinitive in commands cf. § 107).

An exception is the verb

*to forget*, inf. *забывать* (imperfective), *забыть* (perfective)

of both of which the imperative is quite common, e. g.

*не забывайте меня!* = *don't forget me*

but *не забудьте что я вамъ сказать!* = *don't forget what I told you!*

*не забудьте!* = *don't forget!*

*не забудьте написать мнѣ!* = *don't forget to write to me!*

cf. *незабúdка* = *forget-me-not*).

### Use of the Imperative in conditional sentences.

The imperative is frequently used in Russian in unfulfilled conditional sentences; in this construction the imperative can be combined with any noun or pronoun, e. g.

*будь этотъ домъ дешевле, я бы купилъ его* = *if this house had been cheaper, I should have bought it* (lit. = *be this house cheaper*).

In this construction the perfective imperative is always used in spite of the negative:

не случись тамъ лодка, я бы утонуть = *if a boat hadn't happened [to be] there, I should have been drowned*

не сдѣлай онъ этого, она бы пришла = *if he had not done this, she would have come*

скажи я словó, онъ бы и написалъ = *if I had said the word, he would have written*

чужого не жалай—своего не теряй = *if you don't covet other people's goods, you won't lose your own.*

There is a very idiomatic use of the imperative which is especially common in narration and deserves mention. This is a combination of the imperative of the perfective verb *взяться* = *to appear* (lit. *to take oneself*), viz. *возьмись* with the words *откуда ни* = *whencesoever*, e. g.

вдругъ, откуда ни возьмись, заяцъ! = *suddenly, as if from nowhere, there appeared a hare!*

Notice also the following idiomatic uses of the imperative:

того и смотри, что онъ упадѣтъ! = *I am afraid that (sc. at any moment or before we know where we are) he will fall* (lit. = *look out!*)

поминай какъ звали! = *you'll never see [him] again* (lit. = *remember how they called him, sc. his name*)

кажись (instead of *кажется*) = *it seems, one would think.*

Another idiomatic use of the imperative is with the conjunction *хоть*, when it acquires the meaning *you may as well* . . .

если вы не поможете въ нашей просьбѣ, то ужъ не знаемъ, какъ и быть: просто хоть въ петлю ползай! = *if you don't help us in our request, we simply shan't know what to do: we may as well go and hang ourselves!* (lit. *climb into the noose*)

ничего нельзя съ этимъ сдѣлать, хоть брось = *nothing can be done with this, you may as well fling it away.*

Sometimes *хоть* = *even though* (= *хотя*) in this same construction:

хоть убей, не скажу = *even though you kill me, I shall not tell.*

## § 107. The Infinitive (imperfective and perfective).

The difference in meaning between the two aspects of the infinitive has already been explained; it remains to give some examples of the various uses of the infinitive.

In expressions of a general character the imperfective infinitive is always used, e. g.

писать книги неприятно = *to write books is unpleasant*

while if a single event is referred to the perfective is of course necessary, e. g.

сколько у него денег? трудно сказать = *how much money has he? it is difficult to tell.*

The following idiomatic use of the infinitive should be noticed:

ничего делать = *there is nothing to be done*

онъ пьётъ отъ ничего дѣлать = *he drinks because he has nothing to do (lit. from doing nothing)*

говорить ничего (or ничего и говорить)! = *there's nothing more to be said! (sc. that goes without saying)*

(cf. § 51)

ужъ такъ и быть = *such is fate, or very well then, let's make the best of it!*

стало-быть = *consequently . . . or in that case, I suppose . . .*

After verbs of beginning, continuing, ceasing, finishing, &c., the imperfective is used, e. g.

уже начали играть = *they have already begun to play*

онъ продолжалъ читать = *he continued to read*

они перестали говорить = *they ceased talking*

я кончилъ писать = *I have finished writing*

and of course all the more when these verbs are negated.

After the verb *to know how to*, inf. уметь (imperfective), съумѣть (perfective), the imperfective and perfective infinitives respectively are used, e. g.

онъ умѣетъ дѣлать фокусы = *he knows how to do tricks*

съумѣете-ли вы это одѣлать? = *will you know how to do this?*

After the verb *to have time to*, inf. успѣвать (imperfective), успѣть (perfective), the perfective is naturally always used, e.g.

я каждый день успѣваю написать пять писемъ = *every day I manage to write five letters*

успѣете-ли вы это сдѣлать сегодня? = *shall you have time to do this to-day?*

After the verb *to be able*, inf. мочь (imperfective),<sup>1</sup> both aspects are used, according to the sense, e.g.

можете-ли вы это сдѣлать? = *can you do this?*

я не могу говорить (imperfective) = *I can't speak (sc. am physically unable)*

я не могу сказать (perfective) = *I can't say*

я не могъ писать = *I could not write (sc. was physically unable)*

я не могъ написать = *I could not write (sc. just then, that once), or I have been unable to write (sc. till now)*

The perfective future of this verb is supplied as a rule by the perfective verb:

сумѣть = *to know how to*,

but this again is not used where it is a question of surmounting physical difficulties. In this case the Russians as often as not use the imperfective present могу, &c., illogically with future meaning, just as we do in English, e.g.

я могу придти завтра = *I can come to-morrow (sc. shall be able to).*

The imperfective future of мочь is not used; its place is taken by the phrase

бѣду въ состояннн + inf. = *I shall be in a position to . . .*

After the verb *to wish*, inf. хотѣть (imperfective), either aspect can be used, e.g.

я хочу писать = *I wish to write (sc. be an author)*

я хочу написать письмо = *I wish to write a letter*

я не хочу говорить (imperfective) = *I don't want to talk*

я не хочу сказать (perfective) = *I don't want to say*

я хотѣлъ говорить = *I wanted to speak*

я хотѣлъ сказать = *I meant to say.*

<sup>1</sup> N.B. The perfective aspect of мочь is смочь, pres. смогу = *I shall be able*, but this is very seldom used; whenever it is, it implies the surmounting of great physical difficulty.

After verbs such as *любить* = *to like*, *предпочитать* = *to prefer*, *не любить* = *to dislike*, the imperfective infinitive is of course the more usual.

After verbs of *refusing, agreeing, &c.*, either aspect can be used, though the perfective is the commoner.

### Use of the Infinitive instead of the Future.

This is common in such phrases as :

что-же дѣлать? = *what are we to do?* (*what is to be done?*)

написать-ли ему? = *shall I write to him?*

что написать? = *what shall I write?*

пойти и сказать ему = *I shall go and tell him* (or *let us . . .*)

какъ намъ быть? = *how are we to manage?*

зачѣмъ продать? = *why are you* (or *we*) *going to sell?* (= *why sell?*)

сказать вамъ = *shall I tell you?*

какъ вамъ сказать = (lit. = *how shall I tell you?*) *how shall I put it?*

### Use of the Infinitive with the conditional particle.

This occurs in such phrases as :

посмотрѣть-бы? = *shall we have a look?*

Often it is merely the verb *было* that has been omitted, e.g.

хорошо-бы поѣхать = *it would be nice to go*

попробовать-бы? = *shall we have a try* (or *a taste*)?

### Use of the Infinitive instead of the Imperative.

This is especially common in public notices, e.g.

ѣхать шагомъ! (imperfective) = *drive at walking speed!* (cf. *aller au pas!*)

никого не пускать! (imperfective) = *don't let any one go!*

наплевать! = *spit!* (sc. *take no notice of it!*)

The infinitive *плевать* can even be used in place of a finite verb, e.g.

я плевать на твоего хозяина! = *I don't care in the least about your master!*

### Use of the Infinitive in subordinate sentences.

In final clauses the infinitive is used when the subject of the subordinate is the same as that of the principal sentence (cf. § 105), e. g.

я пишу ему, чтобы узнать правду = *I am writing to him in order to find out the truth*

онъ дѣлаетъ это, чтобы помочь мнѣ = *he is doing this in order to help me.*

In conditional clauses the infinitive is very common, e. g.

если ему написать, онъ сдѣлаетъ сей-часъ = *if we write to him, he will do it at once*

если вамъ сказать, вы не повѣрите = *if I tell you, you won't believe [me].*

Sometimes the *если* is omitted, and the infinitive used in the principal as well as in the subordinate sentence, e. g.

много желать — добра не видать = *if you wish for much, you'll see no good*

пойти — такъ пойти! = *if we are going, then let's go!*

A very curious idiomatic use of the infinitive is mentioned here, as it is at first extremely puzzling to the foreigner; it is often, though not always, in the form of an answer to a question, and consists of the infinitive followed by the past or present of the same verb, while in meaning it always implies dissatisfaction or the non-fulfilment of a possibility, e. g.

Question :

слыхали-ли вы про это? = *have you heard about this?*

Answer :

слыхать-то слыхалъ, но не вѣрю = *oh yes, I have heard, but I don't believe it.*

Question :

видали-ли вы царя? = *have you seen the tsar?*

Answer :

видать-то видать! = *oh yes, I've seen him (sc. but never spoken to him)*

говорить-то она говорить, а ничего не дѣлаетъ = *she talks a lot, but does nothing*

умѣть-то я умѣю, но я не хочу = *I know how to [do it], but I don't want to.*



## § 108. The Gerund (imperfective and perfective).

The gerund is used in Russian as in other languages to avoid the complication of an explanatory (usually subordinate) sentence.

The present gerund is naturally formed only from imperfective verbs; the past gerund from both imperfective and perfective. Whenever a gerund from a perfective verb does have the ending of the present gerund, viz. -я, it has perfective (past) meaning, e.g. from

inf. увидѣть = *to perceive*

past perfective gerund

увидѣвши }  
and увидя } = *having perceived.*

## Examples of the use of the Gerunds.

бѣдучи въ городѣ, мы зашли къ вамъ = *being in the town, we looked you up*

прочитавъ письмо, онъ поѣхалъ = *having read the letter, he departed*

говоривъ три часа, онъ сѣлъ на своё мѣсто = *having spoken for three hours, he sat down in his place.*

Some gerunds are very commonly used to express attitude, e.g.

писать лёжа = *to write while lying down*

пѣть сидя = *to sing sitting*

говорить стоя = *to speak standing up.*

The following idioms should be noticed :

молча = *in silence*

мало погодя }  
or немного погодя } = *after a little (lit. = having waited a little)*

нехоти = *unwillingly.*

Some gerunds have quite lost their original meaning and are used as adverbs or conjunctions :

from хотѣть = *to wish*

хотя = *although*

(N.B. willingly is охотно)

from зрѣть = *to look*

зря = *at random, without reflection, to no purpose*

from *смотреть* = *to look*

*несмотря на* + acc. = *in spite of*

*смотря* = *all according*

e. g. *смотря какъ* = *that's just as it may happen*

*смотря по какой цѣнѣ* . . . = *according to the price at which* . . .

and from *умѣть* = *to know how to*, the popular form *умѣючи* = *having the knowledge*, e. g.

*это надо сдѣлать умѣючи* = *you must have the knack to do this*.

### § 108. The Participles (imperfective and perfective).

The participles are little used in conversation but are very common in literature.

There are naturally no present participles formed from perfective verbs. Past participles active are formed from almost all verbs of both aspects; past participles passive are formed from all perfective (transitive) verbs and from a considerable number of imperfective (transitive) verbs.

As regards the use of the participles it may be mentioned that some of them are used as nouns, e. g.

*для курящихъ* = *for smokers*

*для некурящихъ* = *for non-smokers*

*будущее* = *the future*

*въ будущемъ* = *in the future*

*подлежащее* = *the subject (gram.)*

*сказуемое* = *the predicate* „

*насекомое* = *insect*

while in general it may be said that the present participles both active and passive are far more commonly used as pure adjectives without being considered as participles at all, e. g.

*слѣдующій* = *following* is always used for the next

*въ слѣдующемъ году* = *next year*

*свѣдущій* = *knowing, learned*

*онъ очень свѣдущъ по + dat.* = *he is very learned in . . .*

*настоящій* = (1) *present* (of time), = (2) *real*

*будущій* = *future*

*любимый* = *favourite*

*зависимый* = *dependent*

*независимый* = *independent*.

Notice the idiom :

повидимому = *apparently*.

Present participles passive beginning with не- correspond to our e. g. in — *able*

e. g. неумолимый = *inexorable*

неоцѣнимый = *invaluable*.

From several verbs two forms of participle are in use, the regular present participle in -щий (which is phonetically not Russian but Old Bulgarian) and the purely adjectival form in -чий (which is the original Russian form of the present participle);

e. g. from горѣть = *to burn* (intrans.)

горящий = *burning*

горячий = *hot* (esp. of *water, food, &c.*).

Notice the following present participles which are very common in letter-writing :

многоуважаемый (or -ан) . . .

глубоко ————— (or -ая) . . . = *much or deeply respected*

уважающий (or -ая) Васъ

глубоко ————— (or -ая) Васъ = (*deeply*) *respecting you*

любящий (or -ая) Васъ = *your loving*.

The past participle active, too, is but rarely used as a participle. One or two forms are very commonly used as adjectives or nouns, e. g.

бывший = *former*

прошедший = *past*<sup>1</sup> (esp. in grammar).

Notice

сумасшедший = *madman*

from сойти съ ума = *to leave one's mind*.

The past participle passive is by far the most commonly used of all the participles, and even is not rare in conversation. This participle also often takes the place of the passive, e. g.

кѣмъ эта книга была переведена? = *by whom was this book translated?*

<sup>1</sup> Though the forms

прошлый = *last*

прошлое = *the past*

newly-formed from the perfective past прошёл are far commoner.

къмъ эта пьеса написана ? = *by whom is this play written ?*

она одѣта въ чѣрномъ = *she is dressed in black.*

In this case also many participles are almost entirely used as adjectives, e.g.

проклятый = *accursed*

вышеупомянутый = *above-mentioned.*

Notice the idioms :

занято = *occupied* (of places in train, &c.)

заперто = *shut* (of buildings)

биткомъ набито = *chock-full.*

### § 110. The Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive.

The reflexive verb can sometimes be used, as well as the passive participles, to express the passive, but as a matter of fact phrases which in other languages are in the passive are in Russian very often expressed in the active, e.g.

*he is very much liked* would be always translated *его очень любятъ*

*he is hated* = *его очень не любятъ*

*this is not done* = *этого не дѣлаютъ*

though the phrase *это не дѣлается* is also common

*this paper is little read* = *эту газету мало читаютъ* or *эта газета мало читается.*

As a matter of fact, reflexive verbs in Russian are often merely the intransitive forms of otherwise transitive verbs, e.g.

мыть	= <i>to wash</i> (trans.)
мыться	= <i>to wash</i> (intrans.)
купать	= <i>to bathe</i> (trans.)
купаться	= <i>to bathe</i> (intrans.)
продолжать	= <i>to continue</i> (trans.)
продолжаться	= <i>to continue</i> (intrans.)
родиться	= <i>to be born</i>
(родить)	= <i>to bear child</i>

but N.B.

*онъ продолжаетъ писать* = *he continues to write.*

Some transitive verbs when used intransitively require the complete reflexive pronoun instead of the abbreviated form -ся, e.g.

чувствовать	= to feel (trans.)
чувствовать себя	= to feel (intrans.)
я себя чувствую нехорошо	= I don't feel well
как вы себя чувствуете?	= how do you feel?

Many reflexive verbs which are intransitive have no corresponding transitive form, e.g.

сморгаться = to blow one's nose	признаться = to confess
улыбаться = to smile	казаться = to seem
смеяться = to laugh	оставаться = to remain
становиться = to become	случаться = to happen.
надёяться = to hope	простудиться = to take cold

бояться = to fear is both transitive and intransitive.

The verbs

нравиться = to please	любоваться = to admire
касаться = to touch, concern	наслаждаться = to enjoy

are looked upon as intransitive, and take the first the dative, the second the genitive, and the last two the instrumental.

A few reflexive verbs are only used impersonally:

смеркается = it is growing dark
мнѣ хочется = I want to . . .
мнѣ нездоровится = I don't feel well
мнѣ не спится = I can't get to sleep, I don't sleep well
мнѣ снится = I see in my dream, (he) appears to me in my dream
мнѣ чешется = I itch
разумется = it is understood, of course.

Notice the curious use of the impersonal verb :

приходится (lit. = it comes itself)

1. = one has to

приходится играть = one has to play

(мнѣ) пришлось заплатить = (I) had to pay

что придётся намъ сдѣлать? = what shall we have to do?

2. = stands in relation to (me) + inst.

она приходится мнѣ двоюродной сестрой = she stands in the relationship of first cousin to me = she is my first cousin.

## § 111.

## Impersonal Verbs.

Besides the impersonal reflexive verbs already mentioned, a few others, the use of some of which is peculiar, may be noticed here. Some do not call for comment, e. g.

болѣть = *it hurts*

у меня голова болѣть = *my head aches*

„ зубъ „ = *my tooth* „ (this can of course also be used in the plural)

подморѣживаетъ = *it is beginning to freeze.*

*It is freezing* is usually expressed merely by the noun морозъ = *frost* (sc. *there is a frost*), e. g.

сегодня морозъ = *it is freezing to-day*

similarly сегодня оттепель = *it is thawing.*

*It is raining* can only be expressed by:

дождь идѣть (= *rain is going*)

дождь лѣть = *it is pouring*

cf. снѣгъ идѣть = *it is snowing*

градъ идѣть = *it hails*

молнія сверкаетъ = *the lightning is flashing*

громъ гремитъ = *the thunder is thundering.*

These phrases are expressed in the past and the future as follows:

вчера шёлъ дождь = *yesterday it rained*

ночью выпалъ снѣгъ = *there has been a fall of snow in the night*

пошёлъ дождь = *it has started raining*

вчера былъ сильный морозъ = *yesterday there was a hard frost*

будетъ дождя = *it is going to rain (there will be of rain)*

не будетъ дождя = *it is not going to rain*

пересталъ дождь = *the rain has stopped.*

The impersonal verb can also be used, e. g.

выпало много снѣгу (gen.) = *much snow has fallen (it has fallen out much of snow)*

замело or занесло дорогу снѣгомъ = *the road has got covered with snow.*

*To smell* (intrans.) is expressed as follows:

пахнетъ хорошо = *it smells nice*

пахнетъ розами = *it smells of roses*

and by a curious impersonal use of the verb нести = *to carry*

отъ него несётъ духами = *he smells of scent* (lit. = *it carries with scents from him*).

*To suffice :*

хватаетъ (imperfective) = *it suffices*

хватитъ (perfective) = *it will suffice*

недостаётъ = *it wants*

e.g. недостаётъ мнѣ его = *I miss him*.

Notice the following :

достаточно } = *that is enough*  
довольно }

можно = *one may*

можно сказать = *one may say*

можно говорить = *talking is allowed*

можно? = *may one?*

нельзя = *one may not, it is impossible*

нельзя сказать = *one can't say*

but Н.В. неизвестно = *one can't tell* (sc. *know*)

известно, что . . . = *it is well known that*

возможно } = *it is possible*  
можетъ быть }

возможно, что откажется = *it is possible that he will refuse*

можетъ быть онъ знаетъ = *perhaps he knows*

the latter phrase is very commonly transposed: быть можетъ

невозможно = *it is impossible*

невозможно, чтобы онъ не зналъ = *it is impossible that he does not know*

должно быть = lit. *it must be*, but comes to mean *it is probable*,  
*I expect*

должно быть, онъ знаетъ = *I expect he knows*

стало быть. = lit. *it has become* (or *begun*) *to be*, but comes to mean  
*consequently, I suppose*

стало быть, вы его не любите? = *then I suppose (I must conclude that) you don't love him?*

стало быть — такъ! = *I suppose it is so*

не стало + gen. = *there is no more of*

у него не стало денегъ = *his money came to an end*

надо = *it is necessary*

мнѣ надо это сдѣлать сегодня = *I must do this to-day*

не надо = *one must or need not, don't*

не надо написать сегодня = *it is not necessary to write (the letter) to-day*

сказать вамъ? = *shall I tell you?*

нѣтъ, не надо = *no, don't*

нужно = *it is necessary*

не нужно = не надо

слѣдуетъ = *it is proper, ought (lit. = follows)*

не слѣдуетъ = *it is not correct*

вамъ слѣдовало-бы . . . = *you ought to . . .*

Notice the impersonal use of the verb *to begin*:

начинаеть темнѣть = *it is beginning to grow dark*

but когда начинается концертъ? = *when does the concert begin?*

Other common impersonal expressions are:

предстоитъ мнѣ + inf. = *I have got to . . .*

предостается мнѣ + inf. = *it remains for me to . . .*

состоить (изъ or въ) = *it consists (of)*

состоится = *it will take place.*

## § 112. How to express the verb *to be*.

The present tense of the verb *быть* = *to be* has long since become obsolete; it is either omitted absolutely or its place is taken, in writing by a long hyphen, in speaking by a pause, e.g.

я англичанинъ = *I am an Englishman*

это — мой сынъ = *this is my son*

whether the pause is made or not entirely depends on how much emphasis the speaker wishes to put in the subject of the sentence.

Notice the fact that the phrases *this is, that is, there are, those are*, are usually expressed by *это* irrespective of the number and gender of the predicate, e.g.

это моя жена = *this is my wife*

это мои дѣти = *these are my children*

unless of course special emphasis is laid on the pronoun, e.g.

тѣ книги его, а эти — мои = *those books are his, but these are mine.*



*Here is, here are* are often expressed by **вотъ**, e.g.

**вотъ мой домъ** = *here is my house*,

**вотъ** can also mean *over there is*; if very remote distance is pointed to **вонъ тамъ** can be used.

The 3rd sing. of the present is still very commonly used in certain cases, e.g.

**тѣ есть** = *that is (to say)*

*t. e. = i. e.*

Combined with **у** and a pronoun it is the commonest way of saying *have*, e.g.

**у меня есть** = *I have*

**у него есть** = *he has*

though as often as not in these cases the verb **есть** is omitted.

In shops, restaurants, &c., when asking a question, **есть** must be used, e.g.

Question :

**есть у васъ икры?** (genitive) = *have you any caviare?*

Answer :

**есть** = *we have*,

the negative answer is always

**нѣтъ** or **нѣту** = *we have not*.

**Нѣтъ** is really a contraction of **не есть**, and has come to be the ordinary word for *no*; it also means *there is not* and thus *have not*, e.g.

**у меня нѣтъ** = *I have not*

**у меня нѣтъ отца** = *I have no father*.

**То есть** is sometimes added the interrogative particle **-ли**, though **есть** by itself, if the voice is inflected accordingly, is quite sufficient to indicate the question.

**Есть-ли** is apt to sound like **если** (= *if*), and **если** is in fact a corruption of **есть-ли**.

**Нѣтъ-ли у васъ?** is also a very common way of saying *have you got?*

**Найдется-ли у васъ?** from **найти** (= *to find*) is also much used to express the same thing.

**Есть** is also used for *there is, there are* in such cases as :

**есть такіе люди, которые не любятъ икры** = *there are such people, who don't like caviare*

есть многія вещи, о которыхъ я бы хотѣлъ съ вами поговорить =  
*there are many things about which I should like to talk to you*  
 въ этой книгѣ есть много хорошаго = *in this book there is much*  
*that is good.*

The 3rd sing. *есть* and the 3rd pl. *суть* are also used in emphatic declarations or definitions; it should be noted, however, that *суть* is very little used, and that *есть* can be used for any of the three persons singular or plural, e. g.

Тургеневъ любитъ русскихъ какъ онѣ есть = *Turgenev loved the Russians as they are*  
 жизнь есть трудъ для будущаго поколѣнія = *life is labour for the next generation.*

Owing to the fact that *есть* is so seldom used, single adverbs acquire the meaning of whole sentences, e. g.

холодно	= <i>it is cold</i>
тепло	= <i>it is warm</i>
жарко	= <i>it is hot</i>
можно	= <i>it is possible</i>
надо	= <i>it is necessary</i>
мнѣ холодно	= <i>I am cold, &amp;c.</i>

The 3rd sing. of the present of *бывати*, the imperfective frequentative of *быть*, is often used :

это часто бываетъ = *that often happens*  
 это никогда не бываетъ = *that never happens*  
 онъ у насъ бываетъ = *he sometimes comes to see us.*

The past tense of *быть* does not call for special mention. It is often used to express the idea of visits, e. g.

я былъ у нихъ вчера = *I went to see them yesterday.*

The neuter is often used impersonally :

тамъ было двадцать человѣкъ = *there were twenty people there.*

(For other uses of *было* and *бывало* cf. §§ 103, 104.)

The future *буду* presents no difficulties. Notice the idiom :

будетъ ! = *enough !*

(For uses of the future, conditional, imperative, and infinitive of *быть* cf. §§ 104-107.)

### § 113. Various forms of Imperfective and Perfective Verbs.

It has already been remarked that most perfective verbs are formed from imperfective verbs by prefixing a preposition to the latter, and that the preposition used for this purpose loses its meaning. It is impossible to tell which preposition in each particular case is used for the particular purpose of making the imperfective verb perfective, as various prepositions are thus used, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
смотреть	<i>to look</i>	посмотрѣть
писать	<i>to write</i>	написать
дѣлать	<i>to do</i>	сдѣлать
знать	<i>to know</i>	узнать
and others.		

The only thing that can be said is that *по* is used in an infinitely greater number of cases for this purpose than any other preposition. But it must be remembered that while one preposition merely makes the imperfective verb perfective and loses its own meaning, all the other prepositions when compounded with the same verb *both make the verb perfective and endow it at the same time with their own special meaning*. For instance:

разсмотреть = *to examine closely*  
 приписать = *to ascribe, to add in writing*  
 передѣлать = *to do over again, to alter*.

These verbs, as has been remarked, are perfective; the imperfective verbs corresponding to them in meaning, i. e. compounded with the same preposition, are the so-called frequentative imperfective verbs, which form a subsidiary category of imperfective verbs. These verbs are frequentative (or iterative) for the most part only in name; the large majority of them are quite ordinary imperfective verbs. Their peculiarity is that even when they are preceded by a preposition they do not, like other verbs, become perfective. They remain imperfective, forming the ordinary imperfective verb corresponding to a perfective verb which has been made perfective by having a preposition added to it and at the same time been altered in meaning by that preposition. These frequentative imperfective verbs are all formed by some alteration of the stem of the verb, either by lengthening it or by

altering the vowel which precedes the infinitive ending. These verbs seldom occur in their simple form, i. e. uncompounded with a preposition, but one or two are quite commonly used, e. g.

быва́ть (from быть) = *to be often*

это быва́етъ = *that sometimes happens*

я у нихъ быва́ю = *I am in the habit of going to see them*

говори́вать (from говори́ть) = *to be in the habit of saying*

онъ такъ говори́валъ = *he often used to say so.*

Such verbs are really frequentative in meaning. But in the great majority of cases, i. e. when compounded with prepositions, they are merely ordinary imperfective verbs. They may have frequentative meaning, but this as a rule has to be specially expressed by the addition of some such word as *часто* = *often*. E. g. забыва́ть is theoretically the frequentative imperfective from забы́ть (perfective) = *to forget*; я забыва́ю may mean *I often (or always) forget*, but on the other hand it may mean merely *I am forgetting*. Similarly разгово́ривать = *to converse* is theoretically a frequentative imperfective from говори́ть, but it may mean either *I converse* or *I am conversing*. For this reason it is better not to label these verbs *frequentative* or *iterative*, but to call them what they are, in the great majority of cases, viz. *compound imperfective verbs*, in order to differentiate them effectively from the large number of imperfective verbs which are simple and from the perfective verbs the majority of which are compound, while some are simple.

It is now time to examine the various ways in which these compound imperfective verbs are formed.

In a large number of cases they are formed by the insertion of the syllable -ив- or -ив- between the stem of the verb and the infinitive ending. Compound imperfectives from almost all verbs ending in -ать and from many others besides are formed thus and belong to this category. Verbs of this formation which in their original form contain the vowel o in their stems, usually, but not necessarily, change this to a in the compound imperfective. The verbs are here arranged in series of four, e. g.

1. пыта́ть = *to try* = simple imperfective.

2. попы́таться = *to try* = compound perfective with loss of meaning by preposition.

3. испытать = *to experience* = compound perfective with retention of meaning by preposition.

4. испытывать = compound imperfective with retention of meaning by preposition. *It must of course not be imagined that the particular compound perfective, with retention of meaning by the preposition, is in each example here given the only compound perfective formed from that verb.* In the case of some verbs such compounds are very numerous; the examples here given are chosen at random, but they include only verbs that are commonly used:

*Imperfective.*

писать	<i>to write</i>
приписывать	<i>to ascribe</i>
дѣлать	<i>to do</i>
передѣлывать	<i>to alter</i>
смотреть	<i>to look</i>
разсматривать	<i>to examine</i>
читать	<i>to read</i>
прочитывать	<i>to read through</i>
искать	<i>to search</i>
взыскивать	<i>to exact</i>
работать	<i>to work</i>
зарабатывать	<i>to earn</i>
слушать	<i>to listen</i>
подслушивать	<i>to overhear</i>
ломать	<i>to break</i>
проламывать	<i>to break through</i>
строить	<i>to build</i>
устанавливать	<i>to arrange</i>
смеяться	<i>to laugh</i>
осматривать	<i>to deride</i>
красть	<i>to steal</i>
обкрадывать	<i>to rob</i>
тянуть	<i>to pull</i>
стягивать	<i>to tighten, close</i>

*Perfective.*

написать
приписать
сдѣлать
передѣлать
посмотрѣть
разсмотрѣть
почитать
прочитать
прочесть
alternative verbs identical in meaning
поискать
взыскать
поработать
заработать
послушать
подслушать
сломать
проломать
построить
устроить
засмеяться
осмѣять
украсть
обокрасть
потянуть
стянуть

II

Those verbs of class **II**, the 1st sing. of whose present is affected by the personal ending -ю (which changes into -y, cf. §§ 87, 88), are similarly affected in their compound imperfective forms, though no longer belonging to the same class, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
просить	to request	попросить
спрашивать	to ask (a question)	спросить
давить	to squash	подавить
задавливать	to throttle	задавить

From a number of perfective verbs the compound imperfectives are formed by inserting -ва- between the stem and the infinitive ending, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
бить	to hit	побить
убивать	to kill	убить
петь	to sing	спеть
запевать	to strike up a song	запеть
пить	to drink	выпить
пропивать	to spend on drink	пропить
крыть	to cover	покрыть
раскрывать	to uncover, open, discover	раскрыть
мыть	to wash (trans.)	вымыть
умываться	to wash (intrans.)	умыться

Notice especially the verbs (for other simple perfective verbs cf. § 114):

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
давать	to give	дать
pres. даю		pres. дамъ
двѣать	to put	дѣть
pres. дѣваю		pres. дѣну

and бывать = to be often, to happen (from быть = to be).

Some verbs of this category cannot be formed in complete series in this way, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
знать	to know	узнать *
узнавать	to learn (news), to recognize	

*Imperfective.*

pres. узнаю

узнаешь

— to take one's stand<sup>1</sup>

уставать

to grow tired

pres. устаю

and many other very common compounds

болеть

to be ill

commonly used only as impersonal

болит

it aches

заболеть

to fall ill

*Perfective.*

pres. узнаю

узнаешь

стать

pres. стану

устать

pres. устану

заболеть

Those verbs which, both in their imperfective and perfective aspects, have no preposition, i. e. do not require a preposition to form their perfective aspect, can of course also be compounded with any preposition in both aspects, the preposition always retaining its meaning, e. g.

*Imperfective.*

давать

to give

подавать

to hand, serve

продавать

to sell

придавать

to add

передавать

to hand over

издавать

to edit, publish

раздавать

to distribute

воздавать

to reward

выдавать

to deliver

подаваться

to submit

сдавать

to deliver

создавать

to create

задавать

to set (e. g. questions)

додавать

to complete

*Perfective.*

дать

подать

продать

придать

передать

издать

раздать

воздать

выдать

поддаться

сдать

создать

задать

додать

(N.B. Many of the compounds here given have other meanings besides those given here, and of course the same applies to other verbs.)

<sup>1</sup> For its other meanings cf. p. 214.

*Imperfective.*

дѣвать	to put
одѣвать(ся)	to dress
надѣвать	to put on
раздѣвать(ся)	to undress
переодѣвать(ся)	to change dress
задѣвать	to catch hold of

(-ставать)	to take one's stand
переставать	to cease
заставать	to find (sc. at home)
доставать	to obtain
оставаться	to remain
вставать	to get up (sc. from bed)
разставаться	to part (intrans.)

*Perfective.*

дѣть	
одѣть(ся)	
надѣть	
раздѣть(ся)	
переодѣть(ся)	
задѣть	

стать	
перестать	
застать	
достать	
остаться	
встать	
разстаться	

Verbs with infinitives in -чь, -зть, -сти form their compound imperfectives by adding -ать to their stem, e.g.

*Imperfective.*

мочь	to be able
помогать	to help
влечь	to drag
привлекать	to attract

*Perfective.*

смочь	
помочь	
повлечь	
привлечь	

The verb *ѣсть* forms its compound imperfective as follows:

*Imperfective.*

ѣсть	to eat
сѣдять	to eat up, consume
надоѣдать(intrans.)	to importune

*Perfective.*

поѣсть	
сѣсть	
надоѣсть(intrans.)	

The cognate verb *to dine*:

*Imperfective.*

обѣдать

*Perfective.*

( пообѣдать  
отобѣдать

is from the noun *обѣда* = dinner.



Verbs of which the stem contains two adjacent consonants insert *ы* or *и* between these in the compound imperfective, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
слать <sup>1</sup>	<i>to send</i>	послать
pres. шлю		
высылать	<i>to banish</i>	выслать
жать	<i>to press</i>	пожать
pres. жму		
прижимать	<i>to squeeze</i>	прижать
звать	<i>to call</i>	позвать
pres. зову		
называть	<i>to name</i>	назвать
тереть	<i>to rub</i>	потереть
pres. тру		
отирать	<i>to wipe</i>	оттереть
жечь	<i>to burn (trans.)</i>	сжечь
pres. жгу		
зажигать	<i>to light, kindle</i>	зажечь
ждать	<i>to wait</i>	
pres. жду	<i>to await</i>	
ожидать	<i>to expect</i>	
поджидать	<i>to wait (for)</i>	подождать
дожидаться	<div> <i>to attain by waiting</i>  <i>to await until (arrival)</i> </div>	дождаться

There are several verbs of this kind which are never used except in composition, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
умирать	<i>to die</i>	умереть
		pres. умру
начинать	<i>to begin</i>	начать
		pres. начну

<sup>1</sup> This verb has an imperfective frequentative of its own, *посылать* = *to send*.

The verb *-ять* (only used in composition with prepositions, cf. § 88) forms its compound imperfectives as follows:

*Imperfective.*

[-имать]	
ВНИМАТЬ	<i>to attend, hear</i>
ЗАНИМАТЬ	<i>to occupy, to borrow</i>
НАНИМАТЬ	<i>to hire</i>
N.B. ПОНИМАТЬ	<i>to understand</i>
ПОДНИМАТЬ	<i>to lift</i>
(от ПОДЫМАТЬ)	
ПРИНИМАТЬ	<i>to accept</i>
СНИМАТЬ	<i>to take off (clothes)</i>
	<i>to photograph</i>
N.B. —	<i>to take</i>
cf. § 117	
[ВЗИМАТЬ = <i>to levy money</i> ]	
ПОЙМАТЬ	<i>to catch</i>

*Perfective.*

[-ять]	
ВНЯТЬ (pres. not used)	
ЗАНЯТЬ	
pres. займѹ	
займѣшь	
нанять	
pres. наймѹ, &c.	
понять	
pres. поймѹ	
поймѣшь, &c.	
поднять	
pres. поднимѹ	
поднимѣшь, &c.	
принять	
pres. примѹ	
примѣшь, &c.	
снять	
pres. снимѹ	
снимѣшь	
взять	
pres. возьмѹ	
возьмѣшь	
cf. § 117	

In the case of this verb, the stems of which are *-им-* and *-ьм-*, the *н* between the preposition and the stem is explained by the fact that certain prepositions, e.g. *съ* and *въ*, originally ended in a nasal, which was dropped after such forms as *снятъ* had become crystallized. On the analogy of these forms, the *н* was inserted between the preposition and the stem in other compounds of this verb.

The pasts of all these perfectives are *зѣнять, зѣнялѣ, зѣняло; зѣняли: пѣнять, пѣнялѣ, пѣняло; пѣняли, &c.*, i.e. they are, as to be expected, formed from the infinitive.

§ 114. Perfective Simple Verbs.

Not all perfective verbs are compound. There is a fair number of simple verbs which are already perfective in themselves without the prefixing of any preposition.

Such verbs are

дать = to give

дѣть = to put

стать = to take one's stand, to become, to begin.

Besides these there are two categories of simple verbs which are perfective; the first contains verbs of various classes, most of them very common:

*Imperfective.*

бросать

кончать

ложиться

лишать

падать

прощать

— ся

пускать

рѣшать

скакать

становиться

ступать

сидеть

хватать

являться

to throw

to finish

to lie down

to deprive

to fall

to forgive

to say good-bye

to let (go)

to decide

to leap

to become

to step

to sit down

to seize

to appear

*Perfective.*

бросить

кончить

лечь

лишить

пасть

простить

— ся

пустить

рѣшить

скакнуть

стать

ступить

сѣсть

хватить

явиться

Of one verb the imperfective aspect is compounded with a preposition, while the perfective aspect is a simple verb, viz.

покупать

to buy

купить

These verbs being perfective when they are simple, are none the less perfective when compounded with a preposition. Of the corresponding simple imperfective verbs, some when compounded with a preposition become perfective and require the formation of a compound imperfective, others remain imperfective.

*Imperfective.*

ступать	to step
поступать	{ to enter (an institution) to behave }
решать	to decide
разрешать	to permit
являться	to appear
объявлять	to declare
	but
бросать	to throw
выбрасывать	to throw out
становиться	to become
останавливаться	to stop
садиться	to sit down
пересаживаться	to change trains

*Perfective.*

ступать
поступить
решить
разрешить
явиться
объявить
бросить
{ выбросить выбросать }
стать
остановиться
сесть
пересесть

The other category contains a number of verbs ending in -нуть, which by means of this ending connote a single (definitive, perfective) action, e. g.

*Imperfective.*

глядеть	to look
двигать	to move (trans.)
кричать	to cry out
кидать	to fling
махать	to wave
плевать	to spit
совать	to shove
трогать	to touch
шептать	to whisper

*Perfective.*

глянуть
двинуть
крикнуть
кинуть
махнуть
плюнуть
сунуть
тронуть
шепнуть

It is important not to confuse these with other simple verbs ending in -нуть which are imperfective, e. g. тянуть = to pull, which are made perfective in the ordinary way, viz. by prefixing a preposition, потянуть, крепнуть = to grow strong, compound perfective окрепнуть. These verbs in -нуть being perfective are naturally also perfective when compounded with a preposition; the corresponding simple imperfective verbs are usually lengthened by the already familiar process (insertion of -ыв- or -ив-) to form the corresponding compound imperfective, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
глядѣть	<i>to look</i>	гляну́ть <sup>1</sup>
взглядывать	<i>to look up</i>	взгляну́ть
совать	<i>to shove</i>	суну́ть
высовывать	<i>to shove out</i>	высуну́ть
трогать	<i>to touch</i>	трону́ть
дотрогиваться	<i>to come into (physical) contact with</i>	дотрону́ться
кричать	<i>to cry out</i>	крикну́ть
вскрикивать	<i>to scream</i>	вскрикну́ть
Notice		
кидать	<i>to fling</i>	кину́ть
прикидываться	<i>to pretend to be but</i>	прикину́ться
покидать	<i>to abandon</i>	покину́ть
and		
висѣть	<i>to hang (intrans.)</i>	повисну́ть

Some verbs only used in composition with prepositions cannot be formed in complete series, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
обманывать	<i>to deceive</i>	обману́ть
вздыхать	<i>to sigh</i>	вздохну́ть
исчезать	<i>to disappear</i>	исчезну́ть
привыкать	<i>to grow accustomed to</i>	привыкну́ть
отвыкать	<i>to disaccustom oneself to</i>	отвыкну́ть

### § 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs.

Conversely not all compound verbs are perfective. We have already seen that the prefixing of a preposition does not necessarily make a verb perfective, e. g. *разговаривать* = *to converse*, *убивать* = *to kill*, *покупать* = *to buy*, *поступать* = *to behave*. Besides these there is a very large number of compound imperfective verbs which form a class by themselves. These correspond in meaning to a series of compound perfective verbs ending mostly

<sup>1</sup> A perfective verb *поглядѣть* also exists.

in *-ить* or *-ать* and belonging to class II. The corresponding compound imperatives are formed not by lengthening the root with additional syllables, but by altering the infinitive ending from *-ить* or *-ать* to *-ять*, thus making them verbs of class I. In the course of this alteration the phonetic changes observable in the 1st sing. of the present of verbs of class II (palatalization of the last consonant of the stem and substitution of the ending *-у* for *-ю*, e. g. *вижу* from *видѣть*, or insertion of *л*, e. g. *люблю* from *любить*) are reproduced throughout the whole of the compound imperative owing to the influence of the palatal vowel *я*, which in certain cases becomes *а* (i. e. *-ять*, &c., become *-ать*, &c.).

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
встрѣчать	<i>to meet</i>	встрѣтить
воображать	<i>to imagine</i>	вообразить
выражать	<i>to express</i>	выразить
навѣщать	<i>to visit</i>	навѣстить
объяснять	<i>to explain</i>	объяснить
ошибаться	<i>to be mistaken</i>	ошибиться
отвѣчать	<i>to answer</i>	отвѣтить
перемѣнять	<i>to change</i>	перемѣнить
повторять	<i>to repeat</i>	повторить
получать	<i>to receive</i>	получить
позволять	<i>to permit</i>	позволить
посѣщать	<i>to visit</i>	посѣтить
ударять	<i>to strike (trans.)</i>	ударить
убѣждать	<i>to convince</i>	убѣдить
употреблять	<i>to use</i>	употребить
Notice вѣшать	<i>to hang (trans.)</i>	повѣсить
	and many others.	

In the case of a few verbs which are used in their simple forms it is possible to form the already familiar complete series of four, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
ставить	<i>to put</i>	поставить
оставлять	<i>to leave</i>	оставить

and many other very common compounds.

**Compound Imperfectives formed by change of accent.**

In the case of a few verbs the form of the compound imperfective differs from that of the simple imperfective (except for the addition of the preposition) only in the position of the accent, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
па́даты	<i>to fall</i>	[пасть] <sup>1</sup>
пропа́даты	<i>to get lost</i>	пропа́сть
notice also the very common verbs		
попа́даты	<i>to hit upon, to happen on</i>	попа́сть
сы́паты	<i>to scatter</i>	посы́паты
pres. сы́плю, сы́плюш.		pres. посы́плю, посы́плюш.
засы́паты	<i>to cover by strewing</i>	засы́паты
pres. засы́паю		pres. засы́плю, засы́плюш.

notice also the very common variations of this verb

засы́паты	<i>to fall asleep</i>	засну́ть
просы́паться	<i>to awake</i>	просну́ться
двигáть	<i>to move (trans.)</i>	двину́ть
pres. двигаю and дви́жу		
подвига́ть	<i>to move up to (trans.)</i>	подвину́ть

sometimes the r is retained in the perfective

воздвига́ть	<i>to erect</i>	воздвигну́ть
бѣга́ть	<i>to run</i>	побѣга́ть
избѣга́ть	<i>to avoid</i>	{ избѣжа́ть избѣгну́ть

**§ 116. Simple Imperfective Verbs with two forms.**

There is a certain number of simple imperfective verbs which have two distinct forms, distinct, though cognate in meaning. They are both equally imperfective, but while one describes an action that is actually in progress, the other connotes potentiality

<sup>1</sup> The compound perfective упа́сть, pres. упаду́ (compound imperfective упа́даты), is more commonly used than пасть.

or habit. The former are called *actual simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *concrete*), the latter *potential simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *abstract*). A good example is the verb *to go* (sc. *on foot*); to express this there are two distinct imperfective verbs:

1. итти (sometimes spelt идти)
2. ходить.

The first means *actually to go* or *to be going*, the second *potentially to go* or *to be in the habit of going*. Examples:

куда вы идёте? = *where are you going?* (sc. *now*)

ходите-ли вы въ театр? = *do you go to the theatre?* (sc. *ever or often*)

я идѹ гулять = *I am going for a walk*

я уже хожѹ = *I can now walk* (sc. *after an illness*).

The verb *to fly* is:

1. летѣть
2. летать

вотъ летѣтъ аэроплѣнъ! = *there is an aeroplane flying!*

птицы летѣють = *birds fly*

The verb *to carry* is:

1. нести
2. носить

почтальонъ несётъ вамъ писъмó = *the postman is bringing you a letter*

я всегда ношѹ калоши = *I always wear galoshes.*

These verbs are the following:

<i>Actual.</i>			<i>Potential.</i>
inf.	блестѣть	<i>to shine</i>	блистать
pres.	блещѹ		блистаю
	блестѣишь		блистаешь
inf.	бѣжать	<i>to run</i>	бѣгать
pres.	бѣжѹ		бѣгаю
	бѣжишь		бѣгаешь
inf.	везти	<i>to convey</i>	возѣть
pres.	везѹ		вожѹ
	везѣишь		возѣишь



<i>Actual.</i>		<i>Potential.</i>
inf.	вести <i>to lead</i>	водить
pres.	веду	вожy
	ведёшь	водишь
	гнать <i>to drive, chase</i>	гонять
	гоню	гоняю
	гонимъ	&c.
	идти <i>to go (on foot)</i>	ходить
	иду	хожy
	идёшь	ходишь
	летѣть <i>to fly</i>	летать
	лечу	летаю
	летишь	&c.
	ломить <i>to break</i>	ломать
	ломлю	ломаю
	ломаишь	&c.
	лѣзть <i>to climb, clamber</i>	лѣзть
	лѣзу	лѣжy
	лѣзеишь	лѣзишь
	нести <i>to carry, bear</i>	носить <i>(to wear)</i>
	несу	ношy
	несёшь	носишь
	плыть <i>to float, swim</i>	плавать <i>(to swim)</i>
	плыву	плаваю
	плывёшь	&c.
	ползти <i>to crawl</i>	ползать
	ползу	ползаю
	ползёшь	&c.
	садить <i>to set, plant</i>	сажать
	сажy	сажаю
	садишь	&c.
	ѣхать <i>to go (in any way</i>	ѣздить
	ѣду	ѣжy
	ѣдешь	ѣдишь
	<i>except on foot, e. g.</i>	
	<i>by train or on horseback)</i>	

Two verbs belonging to this category are defective, viz.

<i>Actual.</i>		<i>Potential.</i>
ВИДѢТЬ	<i>to see</i>	ВИДѢТЬ
ВИЖУ		
ВИДИШЬ (sometimes contracted to ВИПЬ)		
СЛЫШАТЬ	<i>to hear</i>	СЛЫХАТЬ
СЛЫШУ		
СЛЫШИШЬ		

The presents of the potential imperfectives of these verbs are not used; the infinitives and the pasts are, on the other hand, quite common, especially in negations and interrogations, e.g.

ЕГО НЕ ВИДѢТЬ = *he is not to be seen* (sc. *I can't see him*)

СЛЫХАЛИ-ЛИ ВЫ ЭТОГО ПѢВЦА? = *have you ever heard this singer?*

When these verbs are compounded with prepositions it is usually the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with loss of meaning by the preposition, though such are also sometimes formed by the *potential imperfective*. It is also the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition. On the other hand, it is the *potential imperfective* which forms the *compound imperfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
ЛЕТѢТЬ (actual)	<i>to fly</i>	ПОЛЕТѢТЬ
ЛЕТАТЬ (potential)		
ПЕРЕЛЕТѢТЬ	<i>to fly over</i>	ПЕРЕЛЕТѢТЬ
ВЕСТИ	<i>to lead</i>	ПОВЕСТИ
ВОДѢТЬ		
ПРОВОДИТЬ	{ <i>to lead through</i> <i>to spend (time)</i> }	ПРОВЕСТИ
ВЕЗТИ	<i>to convey</i>	ПОВЕЗТИ
ВОЗѢТЬ		
ПРИБИВАТЬ	<i>to bring (in a conveyance)</i>	ПРИБИВЕТИ

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
нести	to carry	понести
носить	to wear	поносить <sup>1</sup>
приносить	to bring (by hand)	принести
идти	to go (on foot)	пойти
ходить		сходить <sup>2</sup>
приходить	to come (on foot)	прийти (or придти)
находить	to find	найти
проходить	to pass	пройти

Needless to say, both forms of all these verbs have many other compounds besides those given here.

The two verbs видеть and слышать have the following perfectives:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
видеть	to see	увидеть
видать		увидать
слышать	to hear	услышать
слыхать		услыхать

The presents of увидеть and услышать are very common, being the ordinary (perfective) futures of видеть and слышать, e.g.

я увижу его завтра = *I shall see him to-morrow.*

The presents of увидать and услыхать are never used. Their pasts on the other hand are quite common, and it is to be noticed that there is no essential difference in meaning between

увидаль and увидѣль

<sup>1</sup> This verb is seldom used, the perfective future of нести (without idea of any particular direction) is понести; from носить (which usually, but not always, means *to wear*) the imperfective future is naturally буду носить, while *I shall wear* (= *I shall put on*) is надену from надеть.

<sup>2</sup> сходить has a special meaning, viz. *to go, with the implication of speedy return*, e.g.

я схожу на почту = *I shall just run round to the post (and shall be back soon).*

There is also an imperfective verb сходить (perfective сойти) = *to come or go off*, e.g.

онъ сходитъ съ ума = *he is going off his head*  
сходиться, сойтись = *to foregather.*

or between

услыхать and услышать.

Notice the compounds :

*Imperfective.*

завидовать

ненавидѣть

предвидѣть

to envy

to hate

to foresee

*Perfective.*

позавидовать

возненавидѣть

(only imperfective).

Two verbs deserve special mention, viz. бѣжать and ѣхать; these form their compound perfectives from the actual imperfective, but the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the potential imperfective but from yet a third imperfective form of the word, only used in composition :

*Imperfective.*

бѣжать

бѣгать

перебѣгать

избѣгать

убѣгать

прибѣгать

ѣхать<sup>1</sup>

ѣздить

приѣзжать

уѣзжать

to run

to run across

to avoid

to run away

{ to run to  
to have recourse to

to go (except on foot)

to arrive

to depart

*Perfective.*

побѣжать

побѣгать

перебѣжать

{ избѣжать and  
избѣгнуть

убѣжать

прибѣжать

прибѣгнуть

поѣхать

съѣздить<sup>2</sup>

приѣхать

уѣхать

плыть and лѣзть have the same peculiarity, forming their compound imperfectives not with the verbs плывать and лѣзть but with плыва́ть and лѣза́ть; they are not given in full here, because they are of much less common occurrence.

<sup>1</sup> ѣхать and ѣздить form parallels to идти and ходить, e.g.

я ѣду въ Лондонъ = I am travelling to London

я каждый годъ ѣзжу въ Россію = I travel to Russia every year.

<sup>2</sup> съѣздить forms a parallel to сходѣть and means to take a journey and come back soon, e.g.

вчера мы съѣздили къ знакомымъ = yesterday we drove to see some acquaintances (sc. we didn't stay long or we came home again the same day).

It has already been mentioned that the *potential imperfectives* are not often used to form the *compound perfectives*, but usually to form the *compound imperfectives*, e.g. *перелетать*, *проводить*, &c. But we have seen that they can be so used, e.g. *сходить*, *създать*. Besides these there are, however, numerous instances of the use of the *potential imperfectives* to form a *compound perfective*; in such cases the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the actual imperfective but by the already familiar process of the insertion of *-и-* or *-ив-*, or by some other alternative form. It is to be noticed that several potential imperfectives which are in themselves intransitive become transitive when they enter this category of compound perfectives. For the sake of lucidity the verbs are repeated in full:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
нести	to carry	понести
носить	to wear	поносить
приносить	to bring (by hand)	принести
изнашивать	to wear out (materials, clothes)	износить
notice also		
выносить	to carry out, to endure	вынести
вынашивать	to wear out (clothes)	выносить
вести	to lead	повести
водить		
проводить	to spend (time)	провести
проводать	{ to accompany (walking) to see off (at station)	{ проводить
идти	to go (on foot)	пойти
ходить		сходить
уходить	to go away	уйти
уживать <sup>1</sup>		ужидать <sup>2</sup>
ехать	to go (except on foot)	поехать
ездить		съездить
разъезжаться	{ to depart in different directions to miss one another on the road	{ разъехаться
разъезживать	to wear out (the road with traffic)	разъездить

<sup>1</sup> = to flirt with or to nurse; construction: за + instrumental.

<sup>2</sup> = to waste (money), to wear out (a horse).

and somewhat anomalously

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
изъѣзжать	{ to travel over all parts of, visit exhaustively }	изъѣздить

Notice the causative verbs :

расти	to grow (intrans.)	вырасти
выращать	to make grow	вырастить
and поить = to water (animals)		
from пить = to drink.		

### § 117.

### Anomalous Verbs.

A few simple imperfective verbs have as compound perfectives corresponding to them in meaning verbs from other stems ; these are :

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
брать	to take	взять
pres. беру		pres. возьму
берёшь		возьмёшь
бить	to hit	ударить
pres. бью		pres. ударю
бьёшь		ударишь
класть	to put	положить
pres. кладу		pres. положу
кладёшь		положишь
ловить	to catch	поймать
pres. ловлю		pres. поймáю
ловяшь		поймáешь
говорить	to say, tell	сказать
pres. говорю		pres. скажý
говоришь		скажешь

Several of these verbs have compound perfectives or imperfectives formed from the same stem as well as those given here, but it has so happened that e. g. the verb сказать has come to be the regular perfective corresponding in meaning to говорить ; there is a perfective verb поговорить, but it means to have a little talk, while

сказать and говорить both mean *to say* or *tell* (говорить can also mean *to talk*). It is thus possible to form fuller though incomplete series of these verbs, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>	
брать	= to take	←	собрать = to collect
собирать	= to collect		
взимать	= to levy money		
бить	= to hit	←	побить = to hit a little
убивать	= to kill		
ударить	= to hit		
класть	= to put	←	уложить = to pack (trans.)
укладывать	= to pack (trans.)		
_____ся	= " (intrans.)		
полагать	= to suppose	→	положить = to put
			to suppose

Notice the idioms:

полагается? = *is it included (in the price)?*

положимъ = *let us suppose*

ловить	= to catch	←	наловить = to catch a lot
налавливать	= to catch a lot		
			→ поймать = to catch
			Cf. the cognate verb
понимать	= to understand		понять = to understand
говорить	= to say, tell, talk	←	поговорить = to talk a little
разговаривать	= to converse		
уговаривать	= to try to persuade		
отговаривать	= to try to dissuade		
отказывать(ся)	= to refuse		
указывать	= to point out		
оказываться	= to turn out to be		
приказывать	= to order		
заказывать	= "		
наказывать	= to punish		
доказывать	= to prove		
показывать	= to show		
рассказывать	= to relate		
сказывать	= "	→	сказать = to tell, say

*Imperfective.**Perfective.*

[Cf. *кажется* =  $\begin{cases} \text{it seems,} \\ \text{sc. I think} \end{cases}$

*казалось* = *it seemed*

*показалось* = *it seemed*]

Certain verbs are only perfective, e.g.

*очутиться* = *to find oneself suddenly anywhere*

*очнуться* = *to wake up anywhere*

*состояться* = *to take place*.

Others are only imperfective, e.g.

*зависеть* = *to depend*

*значить* = *to mean*

*недоумевать* = *to be perplexed,*  
*to hesitate*

*нуждаться* = *to need*

*повиноваться* = *to submit to*

*подлежать* = *to be open to* (e.g.  
*doubt*)

*подражать* = *to imitate*

*покровительствовать* = *to protect*

*предстоять* = *to be imminent*

*предчувствовать* = *to have a pre-*  
*sentiment of*

*преследовать* = *to persecute*

*принадлежать* = *to belong*

*содержать* = *to contain, maintain*

*содействовать* = *to help, contri-*  
*bute to (morally)*

*сожалеть* = *to regret*

*состоять* = *to consist*

*сочувствовать* = *to sympathize*

*стоить* = *to cost*

Others can be used as imperfectives or perfectives, having only the one form, e.g.

*велеть* = *to order, command*

*жениться* = *to marry (of the man only)*

*ранить* = *to wound*.

Some verbs, apparently perfective, are derived from compound nouns, e.g.

*Imperfective.**Perfective.*

*разумется* *it is understood*  
(*разумь*)

*заботится* *to trouble about anything*  
(*забота*)

*наследовать* *to inherit*  
(*наследникъ*)

*позаботится*

*унаследовать*



## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION WITH VERBS, NOUNS, ETC.

§ 118. The following is not intended to be a complete list of all the various meanings acquired or lent by prepositions in composition ; such a list to be exhaustive would require a whole book to itself.

Here only some of the most important varieties of meaning are given as a help to the beginner, who is often puzzled by the apparently numberless compound words. It is important to remember that most of the prepositions can be used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb. Also that in many cases besides this the original meaning of the preposition is barely apparent. In beginning to read Russian it is always helpful to cut off the preposition or prepositions of any unfamiliar compound word, when the root (and the meaning) will often become clear.

There are four prepositions which are only used in composition, viz. *воз-, вы-, пере- (пре-), and раз-*.

### ВОЗ- (ВЗ-)

The meaning is originally *up*, e.g.

воздвигать ipfv. = *to erect*

but this often lapses, e.g.

возражать ipfv. = *to reply*

возразить pfv. = „

sometimes it merely forms the perfective :

возненавидеть pfv. = *to conceive hatred for*

возможно = *it is possible.*

When the word with which it is compounded begins with a vowel it sometimes, though by no means always, contracts to *вз-*, e.g.

взойти pfv. = *to rise (of the sun, &c.)*

взять pfv. = *to take*

but pres. *возьму* = *I shall take*

*взморье* = *deep water* (at sea, as opposed to the shallow water of an estuary).

If the word with which it is compounded begins with *к, х, п, т*, it becomes *вос-*, e.g.

восходъ солнца	= sunrise
востокъ	= the East
Воскресѣніе	= Sunday (Resurrection)
воспрещать ipfv.	} = to forbid
воспретѣть pfv.	

it sometimes appears as *вс-* before words beginning with these same consonants :

всходѣть ipfv.	= to rise
вскричать pfv.	= to scream.

Care must be taken not to mistake *воз-* for *въ* in composition with words beginning with *з, с*.

#### ВЫ-

usually = *out*, e.g.

выходѣть ipfv.	= to go out (on foot)
выйти pfv.	= " "
выходъ	= exit
выставка	= exhibition

it sometimes means *thoroughly*

высѣкать }	} = to thrash thoroughly
высѣчь }	
выздоровѣть pfv.	= to get thoroughly well

sometimes merely to form the perfective

выпить pfv.	= to drink (so. to drink to the end)
-------------	--------------------------------------

in composition with *нести* and *носить* cf. § 116.

A peculiarity of this preposition in composition with verbs is that when it makes the verb compounded with it perfective it attracts and holds the accent throughout, while if the compound verb is imperfective the accent remains on the stem of the verb, e.g.

выражать ipfv.	} = to express
выразить pfv.	

#### Imperfective.

выѣзжать	to drive out
выѣзживать	to break in horses

#### Perfective.

выѣхать
выѣдять

Cf. also in composition with *нести* and *носить* § 116.

In composition with nouns and adjectives the accent is always on *вы-*, e. g.

*выговоръ* = *pronunciation, lecture* (sc. *scolding*)

*вывозъ* = *export*.

**пере-**

generally = *over, across, afresh*

*переходить* ipfv. } = *to cross on foot*  
*перейти* pfv. }

*перезжать* ipfv. } = *to cross (by boat or rail)*  
*переехать* pfv. } *to move (into a new house)*

*перемена* = *change* (e. g. *in the weather*)

*переписка* = *correspondence*

*перевозъ* = *ferry*

*переводъ* = *translation*

*перевалъ* = *watershed*

It can imply excess :

*пересолить* = *to over-salt*.

Another form of this preposition is

**пре-**

which is also used to express the ideas *round, over, or across*.

*претворить* ipfv. } = *to transform, convert*  
*претворить* pfv. }

*предавать* ipfv. } = *to hand over to, to betray*  
*предать* pfv. }

*преданный* = *devoted*

*преступление* = *transgression, crime*

*препятствие* = *obstacle*

*предѣлъ* = *boundary, region*

*превышать* ipfv. = *to surpass (trans.)*

*презирать* ipfv. = *to despise*

*прерывать* ipfv. } = *to interrupt*  
*прервать* pfv. }

*преимущество* = *advantage*

Notice *непрѣменно* = *without fail*.

In composition with other prepositions :

превосходить ipfv. } = *to excel*  
 превзойти pfv. }  
 превосходительство = *Excellency*  
 превосходно! = *excellent!*  
 преподавать ipfv. } = *to teach, lecture on.*  
 преподать pfv. }

In composition with adjectives it lends superlative meaning, e.g.

прекрасный = *very beautiful, splendid*

(the original meaning of красивый was *bright*) cf. § 59.

### раз-

usually = *asunder, dis-, di-*

разводъ = *divorce*  
 разменить pfv. = *to change (money)*  
 размеръ = *dimension*  
 раздѣлять ipfv. } = *to divide, distribute*  
 раздѣлить pfv. }  
 разбивать ipfv. } = *to break (e.g. glass or china).*  
 разбить pfv. }

It can also as it were *amplify* any activity, e.g.

разговаривать ipfv. = *to converse*  
 разговоръ = *conversation*  
 рассказывать ipfv. } = *to narrate.*  
 рассказать pfv. }  
 рассказъ = *a tale*  
 развратъ = *depravity*  
 разводить ipfv. = *to breed.*

It often corresponds to our *un-*:

раздѣваться ipfv. } = *to undress oneself*  
 раздѣться pfv. }  
 развѣтие = *development (lit. unwinding)*  
 развалины = *ruins*  
 разстраивать ipfv. } = *to unsettle, upset (morally).*  
 разстроить pfv. }

It sometimes means *quite*, e. g.

я не разслышать = *I didn't quite hear*.

Notice the following:

умъ  $\doteq$  *mind*

разумъ = *intellect*

умный = *clever*

разумный = *sensible (with common sense)*

разсчётъ = *calculation*

разсѣянный = *absent-minded*.

The *ъ* is retained before palatal vowels, e. g.

разъѣхаться pfv. = *to break up (of a party)*.

When *и* follows it becomes *ы*, e. g.

разыскать from разъ + искать.

Before *к, х, п, т, ц, ч, ш, щ* раз- becomes рас-

расходы = *expenses*.

Occasionally, usually when the accent falls on it, раз- becomes роз-, e. g.

розили, розлила = *to pour out (tea), to spill*

alternative past of разлить pfv., the other being разлить, &c.

рописание поѣздѡвъ = *time-table of trains (on the wall)*.

In composition with other prepositions:

распродажа = *sale (in shops)*

расположеніе = *disposition, temperament*

распоряженіе = *disposition (control), arrangement*

распространеніе = *propagation*.

The other prepositions used in composition are:

безъ

= (*without*), *dis-*, *un-* (this never changes to бес-)

безпокоить ipfv. }  
обезпокоить pfv. } = *to disturb*

безусловно = *unconditionally, absolutely*

безкорыстный = *disinterested*

безпокойный = *anxious*

безобразный = *horrible, disgraceful* (lit. *having no pattern*,  
sc. *unlike anything*).

When **я** follows it becomes **ы**:

**безымянный** = *nameless*  
(безъ + имя).

**въ (во)**  
= *in, into*

**входить (въ) ipfv.**  
**войти (въ) pfv.** } = *to enter*  
**входъ** = *entrance*

**вводить ipfv.**  
**вести pfv.** } = *to introduce* (e. g. a custom)

**влюбиться (въ) pfv.** = *to fall in love with*

**включительно** = *inclusively*.

Notice

**вставать ipfv.**  
**встать pfv.** } = *to get up (from bed)*

**вниманіе** = *attention*.

The **ъ** is retained before vowels, e. g.

**сѣѣхать pfv.** = *to ride or drive into*.

**до**  
= *up to, to the end, pre-*

**доходить (до) ipfv.**  
**дойти (до) pfv.** } = *to reach (on foot)*  
**доѣхать (до) pfv.** = *to reach (except on foot)*

**доходъ** = *income*

**договоръ** = *treaty*

**доказательство** = *proof*

**допотопный** = *antediluvian*

**докладъ** = *lecture (on anything)*

**достать** = *to obtain*.

**за**  
= *behind*

**заходъ солнца** = *sunset*

**закатъ** „ „

It has many uses not obviously though indirectly connected with this meaning :

заходить къ ipfv. }  
зайти къ pfv. } = to call on, look in on

задержка = delay

заложить = to mortgage

закладъ = pledge, wager

заказъ = order (for anything, e.g. goods)

заказное письмо = registered letter

заплатить pfv. = to pay

(платить ipfv.)

заставлять ipfv. }  
заставить pfv. } = to compel

заставать ipfv. }  
застать pfv. } = to find (any one, e.g. at home)

\* за often gives the meaning : to start doing anything, e.g.

засмѣяться = to break into laughter

which is the perfective of

смѣяться = to laugh

запѣть pfv. = to burst into song

заговорить pfv. = to start talking.

With a reflexive verb it can mean to forget oneself, be lost in doing anything :

зачитать pfv. = to read till you lose sense of time and place.

ИЗЪ (ИЗО)

= out

издавать ipfv. }  
издать pfv. } = to edit, publish

издание = edition, publication

изложение = exposition.

The **ъ** is retained before vowels, e.g.

изъяснение = explanation.

When **н** follows it becomes **н**, e.g.

изысканный = exquisite, far-fetched.

Before **к, х, п, т, ч, ц** it becomes **ко-** :

исходъ = *issue (out of a difficulty)*

исполнить ipfv. } = *to fulfil*  
исполнить pfv. }

исключёние = *exception*

исключительно = *exclusively*.

**между**

= *inter-* (but never with verbs)

международный = *international*.

**на**

= *on to*

находить ipfv. } = *to find (to come upon)*  
найти pfv. }

надежда = *hope (something put on)*

надеяться = *to hope*.

**Notice**

наследникъ = *heir*

насмотрѣть = *cold (in the head)*

наука = *science*

народъ = *people, nation*

наложеннымъ платежѣмъ = *pay on delivery*

настоящій = *present, actual, real*

наступающій = *coming, imminent*

намѣреніе = *intention*.

Often with the meaning of *to do anything to the full, or largely*

наѣсться pfv. = *to eat one's fill*

накупить pfv. = *to buy a quantity of*

наслаждаться ipfv. = *to enjoy oneself*

начитанный = *well-read*.

Preceded by a negative it expresses the idea *not to be able to have enough of*

ненаглядный = *that one cannot feast one's eyes on long enough*

ненасытныи = *insatiable*.



**НАДЪ**

= *over*

на́дпись = *inscription*

принадле́жать ipfv. = *to belong*.

**О (об- обо)**

= *about*

обходи́ть ipfv. }  
обойти́ pfv. } = *to go round*

необходи́мый = *essential*

обду́мывать ipfv. }  
обду́мать pfv. } = *to think over*

ошиб́ка = *mistake (= missing the mark)*.

This meaning is often not apparent :

обижа́ть ipfv. }  
обидѣ́ть pfv. } = *to offend (lit. look round)*

опечата́ка = *misprint*

огово́рка = *reserve, limitation*

обѣ́дъ = *dinner*

огоро́дъ = *kitchen-garden*.

The *ъ* is retained before a palatal vowel, e. g.

объя́сненіе = *explanation*.

When *н* follows it becomes *н*, e. g.

обы́скъ = *inquiry, search*.

**ОТЪ (ото)**

= *away from*

отходи́ть (отъ) ipfv. }  
отойти́ (отъ) pfv. } = *to go away from*

отте́пель = *a thaw*

отлі́чно! = *excellent!*

отрѣ́зать = *to cut off*

sometimes *ото-* as in *отосла́ть* = *to send away*.

The *ъ* is retained before vowels, e. g.

отѣ́здъ = *departure*.

When *н* follows it becomes *н*, e. g.

оты́скать = *to find by dint of searching*.

## по

The commonest use is to make imperfective verbs perfective; in doing so it usually connotes that the action will be of less duration or of less importance than that expressed by the simple imperfective verb, e. g.

поговорить = *to talk a little*

потанцовать = *to dance a little*

посмеяться = *to laugh a little.*

But in a large number of cases it has lost all trace of its original meaning, e. g.

посылать ipfv. }  
послать pfv. } = *to send*

получать ipfv. }  
получить pfv. } = *to receive*

посещать ipfv. }  
посетить pfv. } = *to visit.*

Notice the following very common words, all compounded with по:

походъ	= <i>campaign</i>
подобожь (на)	= <i>like (adj.)</i>
похороны	= <i>funeral</i>
постель	= <i>bed (specifically bedding)</i>
поступокъ	= <i>act, behaviour</i>
посуда	= <i>crockery</i>
потери	= <i>loss</i>
подержанный	= <i>second-hand</i>
посль	= <i>after</i>
последній	= <i>last</i>
последствие	= <i>consequence</i>
последовать (за) pfv.	= <i>to follow after</i>
and hundreds of others.	

Сf. слѣдующій = *next*  
 вслѣдствіе + acc. = *as a result of*  
 слѣдовать (за) ipfv. = *to follow after*  
 слѣдять (за) ipfv. = *to follow.*

**ПОДЪ (ПОДО-)**

= *under*

подходить (къ) ipfv. }  
подойти (къ) pfv. } = *to approach*

поднимать } ipfv. }  
or подымать } pfv. } = *to lift*  
поднять pfv. }

поддѣльный = *counterfeit*

подходящій = *suitable*

поддержка = *support*

поджигательство = *incendiarism*

подозрѣвать ipfv. = *to suspect*

подозрительный = *suspicious*.

The **ъ** is retained before vowels, e. g.

подъѣздъ = *porch, entrance*.

When **я** follows it becomes **ы**, e. g.

подыскать = *to match (e. g. colours), assort*.

**(передъ)**

**пред-**

= *fore (fore-), pre-*

предсказывать ipfv. }  
предсказать pfv. } = *to foretell*

предварительный = *preliminary*

предпочитать ipfv. }  
предпочесть pfv. } = *to prefer*

предложѣніе = *offer, suggestion*.

**Notice:**

предпринимать ipfv. }  
предпринять pfv. } = *to undertake*

предпріятіе = *undertaking*.

The **ъ** is retained before vowels, e. g.

предъявленіе = *presentation (of a claim)*.

When **я** follows it may be written **ы**, e. g.

предыдущій = *preceding*.

**при**

in composition often expresses the idea of *motion towards* or of the *application of one thing to another*:

приходить ipfv. }  
 прийти pfv. } = *to come (on foot)*

приѣзжать ipfv. }  
 приѣхать pfv. } = *to arrive*

принимать ipfv. } = { *to accept (invitations), to receive*  
 принять pfv. } { *(guests), to take (medicines)*

примѣръ = *example*

напримѣръ = *for example* (abbr. напр.)

причина = *reason*.

**про**

= *through, past*

проходить ipfv. }  
 пройти pfv. } = *to pass, go through*.

**Notice :**

пропускная бумага = *blotting-paper*

простуда = *cold (on the chest)*

напрокатъ = *on hire*

продавать ipfv. }  
 продать pfv. } = *to sell*

проиграть = *to lose (a game), to lose money at play*.

**(противъ)****противо-**

= *anti-*

противодѣйствовать = *to counteract*

противорѣчiе = *contradiction, inconsistency*.

**съ (со)**

= (1) *with* (2) *from*

(1) **сравнѣніе** = *comparison*

**сходство** = *resemblance*

**состоять (изъ, изъ)** ipfv. = *to consist (of)*

**соглашаться (съ)** ipfv. }  
**согласиться (съ)** pfv. } = *to agree (with)*

(2) **снимать** ipfv. } = { *to take off (clothes) to take*  
**снять** pfv. } { *(photographs)*

**ссылка** = *exile*.

Sometimes the meaning is not apparent :

**считать** ipfv. }  
**счесть** pfv. } = *to count, consider*

**счётъ** = *bill, account*

**на счётъ** = *to the account of, as regards,*  
*on account of*

**соборъ** = *cathedral*

**сомнѣваться** ipfv. = *to doubt*

**съѣсть** pfv. = *to eat*

The **ъ** is retained before vowels, e. g.

**съѣздъ** = *meeting, assembly*.

When **и** follows it becomes **ы**, e. g.

**съѣзды** = *spy*.

**у**

= *away*

**уходить** ipfv. }  
**уйти** pfv. } = *to go away (on foot)*

**уѣзжать** ipfv. }  
**уѣхать** pfv. } = *to depart (e. g. by rail)*

**убирать** ipfv. }  
**убрать** pfv. } = *to clear away*

But this primary meaning is often lost :

уставать ipfv. } = *to grow tired*  
 устать pfv. }  
 ухóдь = *looking after, care for*  
 уѣздъ = *district*  
 убо́рная (sc. ко́мната) = *lavatory*  
 указывать (на) ipfv. } = *to point to*  
 указать (на) pfv. }  
 указы́ = *decree*  
 униже́ние = *humiliation*  
 уми́рать ipfv. } = *to die*  
 умереть pfv. }  
 удо́бно = *convenient, comfortable*  
 уго́дно = *agreeable*  
 какъ вамъ уго́дно = *just as you like.*









